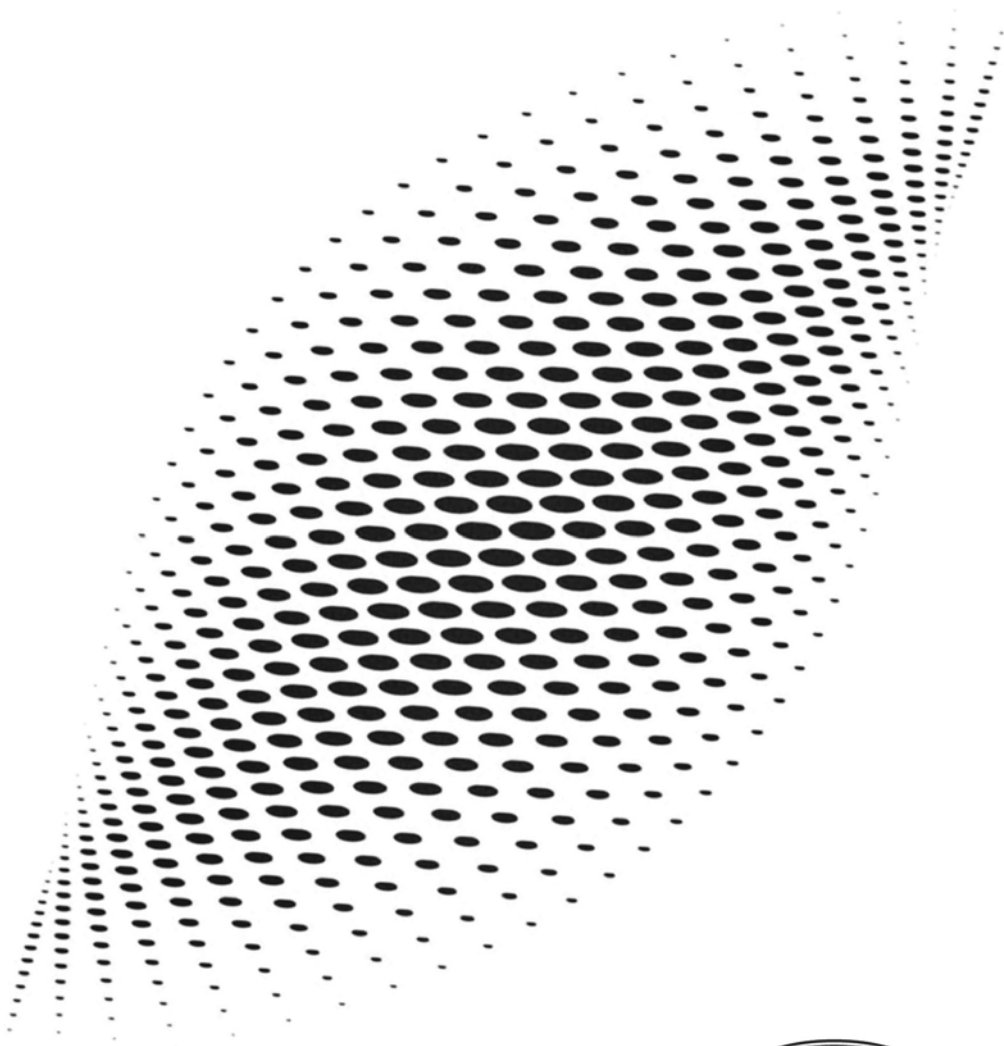


FORD **KUGA** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2023

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3992en-202310-20231121144606

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Publication	17
Using This Publication	17
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication	17
Special Notices - Turkey	18

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	20
Service Data	21
Event Data	21
Settings Data	22
Connected Vehicle Data	22
Mobile Device Data	22
Emergency Call System Data	23

Environment

Protecting the Environment	24
----------------------------------	----

Visual Search

Interior Overview - LHD	25
Interior Overview - RHD	26
Exterior Overview	28

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions	29
Child Restraint Anchor Points	30
Child Restraints	31
Booster Seats	34
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks	35
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks	35
Child Safety Lock Indicator	36
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting	36

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions	37
----------------------------	----

Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	37
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	37
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	38
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height	39
Seatbelt Reminder	39
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting	40

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	41
How Do the Side Airbags Work	41
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work	42
Airbag Precautions	42
Passenger Airbag Indicators	43
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off	43
Airbags – Troubleshooting	44

Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System	45
--	----

eCall

What Is eCall	46
How Does eCall Work	46
Emergency Call Requirements	46
Emergency Call Limitations	46
Manually Making an Emergency Call	46
Emergency Call Indicators	47
Changing the Backup Battery	48
eCall – Troubleshooting	48

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	49
Removing the Key Blade	49
Locating Your Vehicle	49

Table of Contents

Changing the Remote Control Battery	49
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	51
Programming the Remote Control	51
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting	51

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	52
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	53
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function	54
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor	54
Autounlock	54
Mislock	55
Autorelock	55
Door Lock Indicators	55
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings	55
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting	55

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	58
Keyless Entry Limitations	58
Keyless Entry Settings	58
Using Keyless Entry	58
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting	59

Easy Entry and Exit

How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work	60
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off	60

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions	61
Opening the Liftgate	61
Closing the Liftgate	61

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions	63
Opening the Liftgate	63
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off	65
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height	65
Closing the Liftgate	65
Stopping the Liftgate Movement	68
Liftgate Obstacle Detection	68
Liftgate – Troubleshooting	68

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings	71
Security – Troubleshooting	72

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	74
Locking the Steering Wheel	74
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off	74

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	75
Autowipers	76
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off	77
Reverse Wipe	77
Checking the Wiper Blades	77
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	77
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades	78
Washers	78
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	79

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control	80
---------------------------------	----

Table of Contents

Headlamps	80	Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors	100
Headlamps – Troubleshooting	81	Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors	100
Autolamps	82		
Exterior Lamps	82		
Automatic High Beam Control	84		
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	86		
Glare Free High Beam Control	86		
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	89		
Adaptive Front Lighting	89		
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting	92		
Interior Lighting			
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off	93		
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	93		
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off	93		
Interior Lamp Function	93		
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	93		
Ambient Lighting	94		
Windows			
Opening and Closing the Windows	95		
Global Opening and Closing	95		
Window Bounce-Back	96		
Locking the Rear Window Controls	97		
Interior Mirror			
Interior Mirror Precautions	98		
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	98		
Exterior Mirrors			
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles Without: Memory Function	99		
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Memory Function	99		
		Moonroof	
		Opening and Closing the Sunshade	102
		Opening and Closing the Moonroof	102
		Venting the Moonroof	103
		Moonroof Bounce-Back	103
		Instrument Cluster	
		Instrument Cluster Overview - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	104
		Instrument Cluster Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)	105
		Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	106
		Tachometer - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	106
		Power Gauge	106
		Speedometer	107
		Fuel Gauge	107
		Vehicle Range Display	107
		Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	108
		What Is the Information Bar	108
		What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	108
		Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	108
		What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators	109
		Instrument Cluster Indicators	110
		Instrument Cluster Display	
		Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls	112
		Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu	112

Table of Contents

Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display	113
Fuel Economy Display - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	113
Fuel Economy Display - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	114
EV Coach	114
Electric Economy	114
Battery Charge	115
Brake Coach	115
Trip Summary	115
Vehicle Charging Status	115

Personalized Settings

Changing the Language	116
Changing the Measurement Unit	116
Changing the Temperature Unit	116
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit	116

Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer	117
Resetting the Trip Computer	117
Trip Data	117

Head Up Display

What Is the Head Up Display	118
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off	118
Head Up Display Settings	118
Head Up Display Indicators	119
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting	119

Remote Start

What Is Remote Start	120
Remote Start Precautions	120
Remote Start Limitations	120
Enabling Remote Start	120

Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle	120
Remote Start Settings	120

Climate Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	122
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	122
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	122
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	122
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	122
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off	122
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	123
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	123
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	123
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off	123
Setting the Temperature	123
Directing the Flow of Air	123
Auto Mode	124
Climate Control Hints	125

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter	127
Locating the Cabin Air Filter	127
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter	127
Refreshing the Interior Air	127

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	128
Sitting in the Correct Position	128
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 8-Way Manual Seat	129
Power Seats	131
Heated Seats	134

Table of Contents

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Precautions	135
Manual Seats	135
Heated Seats	136

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	138
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	138
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	138
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	138
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings	139
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	139
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	140

Memory Function

What Is the Memory Function	141
Memory Function Precautions	141
Locating the Memory Function Buttons	141
Saving a Preset Position	141
Recalling a Preset Position	141

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	143
Playing Media Using the USB Port	143
Charging a Device	143

Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	145
Power Outlet Precautions	145
Locating the Power Outlets	145

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger	146
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions	146
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	146
Charging a Wireless Device	147

Storage

Cup Holders	148
Glasses Holder	148

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions	149
Push Button Ignition Switch	149
Starting the Engine	150
Stopping the Engine	151
Automatic Engine Stop	152
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	153
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting	153

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle	157
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work	157
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics	157
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators	157
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting	158
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information	159

Table of Contents

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting	161
Power Flow	162

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	165
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	165
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	165
Stopping the Engine	165
Restarting the Engine	165
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	166
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning	166
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	166

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	168
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	168
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	168
Stopping the Engine	168
Restarting the Engine	168
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	169
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	169

Fuel and Refueling

Fuel and Refueling Precautions	171
Fuel Quality	171
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel	172
Running Out of Fuel	173
Refueling	174
Fuel Tank Capacity - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	179
Fuel Tank Capacity - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	180
Fuel Consumption Regulations	181

Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBoost™	181
Fuel Consumption Figures - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	182
Fuel Consumption Figures - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)	183
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting	183

Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter	185
Catalytic Converter Precautions	185
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting	185

Gasoline Particulate Filter

What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter	186
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work	186
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions	186
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements	186
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	186

High Voltage Battery - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What Is the High Voltage Battery	188
High Voltage Battery Precautions	188

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What is AC Charging	189
Charging Your Vehicle Precautions	189
Charging Equipment	189
Locating the Charge Port	193
Charge Port Indicators	194

Table of Contents

AC Charging	195	All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting	214
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging	198	Brakes	
Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences	198	Brake Precautions	215
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols	203	Anti-Lock Braking System	215
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	204	Brake Over Accelerator	215
		Checking the Brake Fluid	215
		Brakes – Troubleshooting	216
Manual Transmission		Electric Parking Brake	
Manual Transmission Precautions	206	What Is the Electric Parking Brake	218
Shifting Into Reverse	206	Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission	218
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators	206	Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission	218
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level	206	Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	219
Clutch Fluid Specification	206	Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	219
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting	207	Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission	219
		Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission	219
Automatic Transmission		Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	219
Automatic Transmission Precautions	208	Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	220
Automatic Transmission Positions	208	Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	220
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear	209		
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators	209	Reverse Brake Assist	
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P)	209	What Is Reverse Brake Assist	222
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings	210	How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work	222
Temporary Neutral Mode	210	Reverse Brake Assist Precautions	222
Automatic Return to Park (P)	211	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off	223
Grade Assist - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission	212	Overriding Reverse Brake Assist	223
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting	212	Reverse Brake Assist Indicators	223
All-Wheel Drive			
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work	214		
All-Wheel Drive Precautions	214		
All-Wheel Drive Limitations	214		

Table of Contents

Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting	224
--	-----

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	226
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	226
Hill Start Assist Precautions	226
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission	226
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting	226

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work	227
Switching Auto Hold On and Off	227
Using Auto Hold - Manual Transmission	227
Using Auto Hold - Automatic Transmission	228
Auto Hold Indicators	228

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	229
How Does Traction Control Work	229
Switching Traction Control On and Off	229
Traction Control Indicator	229
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	229

Stability Control

What Is Stability Control	231
How Does Stability Control Work	231
Switching Stability Control On and Off	231
Stability Control Indicator	231

Steering

Electric Power Steering	232
Steering – Troubleshooting	233

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions	235
-------------------------------	-----

Switching Parking Aid On and Off	235
Rear Parking Aid	236
Front Parking Aid	236
Side Parking Aid	237
Parking Aid Indicators	239
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	239

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera	241
Rear View Camera Precautions	241
Rear View Camera Limitations	241
Locating the Rear View Camera	241
Rear View Camera Guide Lines	241
Rear View Camera Settings	242

180 Degree Camera

How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work	244
180 Degree Camera Precautions	244
Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off	244

360 Degree Camera

How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work	245
360 Degree Camera Precautions	245
360 Degree Camera Limitations	245
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras	245
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines	245
360 Degree Camera Settings	246
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off	246
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View	247

Active Park Assist

What Is Active Park Assist	248
Active Park Assist Precautions	248
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Fully Active Park Assist	248

Table of Contents

Switching Active Park Assist On and Off - Vehicles With: Semi Active Park Assist	248
Entering a Parking Space	249
Exiting a Parking Space	249
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting	250
Cruise Control	
What Is Cruise Control	251
Switching Cruise Control On and Off	251
Setting the Cruise Control Speed	251
Canceling the Set Speed	252
Resuming the Set Speed	252
Cruise Control Indicators	252
Adaptive Cruise Control	
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work	253
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work	253
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions	253
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	254
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off	256
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	256
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	256
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	257
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	257
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	258
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	259
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	260
Canceling the Set Speed	261
Resuming the Set Speed	262
Overriding the Set Speed	262
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	262
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	262
Lane Centering	262
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting	265
Predictive Speed Assist	266
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting	269
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	269
Drive Mode Control	
What Is Drive Mode Control - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	270
What Is Drive Mode Control - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	270
Selecting a Drive Mode	271
Drive Modes	271
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes	272
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes – Troubleshooting	273
Eco Coach	
What Is Eco Coach	274
How Does Eco Coach Work	274
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work	274
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level	274
Viewing the Trip Summary	274

Table of Contents

Local Hazard Information

What Is Local Hazard Information	275
Local Hazard Information Precautions	275
Local Hazard Information Indicators	275
Enabling Local Hazard Information	275
Checking Local Hazard Information Status	275

Speed Limiter

How Does the Speed Limiter Work	276
Speed Limiter Precautions	276
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering	276
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering	276
Setting the Speed Limit	276
Changing the Set Speed Limit	276
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering	276
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering	277
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	277
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	277
Speed Limiter Indicators	277
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	277

Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter	278
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work	278
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions	278
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering	278
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering	279

Setting the Speed Limit	279
Changing the Set Speed Limit	279
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering	279
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering	279
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	279
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	279
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators	280
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	280
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter	280
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting	280

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System	281
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	281
Lane Keeping System Precautions	281
Lane Keeping System Limitations	281
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	282
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	282
Lane Keeping System Settings	282
Aid Mode	282
Alert and Aid Mode	283
Lane Keeping System Indicators	283
Blind Spot Assist	284
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	286
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	289

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System	290
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	290

Table of Contents

Blind Spot Information System Precautions	290	How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	299
Blind Spot Information System Limitations	290	Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	299
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission	291	Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	300
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission	291	Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control	300
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	291	Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	300
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors	291	Distance Indication	301
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage	292	Forward Collision Warning	301
Blind Spot Information System Indicators	293	Automatic Emergency Braking	302
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	293	Evasive Steering Assist	302
		Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	303
Cross Traffic Alert		Speed Sign Recognition	
What Is Cross Traffic Alert	295	What Is Speed Sign Recognition	305
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	295	How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work	305
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	295	Speed Sign Recognition Precautions	305
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	296	Speed Sign Recognition Limitations	305
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	296	Speed Sign Recognition Indicators	305
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors	296	Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning	306
Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage	296	Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting	306
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	297		
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	297	Driver Alert	
		What Is Driver Alert	307
Pre-Collision Assist		How Does Driver Alert Work	307
What Is Pre-Collision Assist	298	Driver Alert Precautions	307
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	298	Switching Driver Alert On and Off	307
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control	299	Resetting Driver Alert	307
		Driver Alert Indicators	308
		Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	308

Table of Contents

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition	309
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work	309
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions	309
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations	309
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators	310
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings	310
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting	311

Wrong Way Alert

What Is Wrong Way Alert	312
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work	312
Wrong Way Alert Precautions	312
Wrong Way Alert Limitations	312
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off	312
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting	313

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	314
Roof Rack	314

Luggage Compartment

Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover	316
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points	316

Connecting a Trailer

Tow Ball – Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball	318
Tow Ball – Vehicles With: Retractable Tow Ball	320
Connecting a Trailer	323

Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions	324
------------------------------------	-----

Towing a Trailer Limitations	324
Loading Your Trailer	324
Trailer Towing Hints	325
Towing Weights and Dimensions	325

Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions	327
Driving on Snow and Ice	327
Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold Weather Driving	327
Breaking-In	327
Driving Economically	327
Driving in Special Conditions	328
Driving Through Shallow Water	329
Floor Mats	329

Crash and Breakdown Information

High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions – Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	331
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	332
Jump Starting the Vehicle	332
Post-Crash Alert System	335
Post-Collision Braking	335
Automatic Crash Shutoff	335
Recovery Towing	336
Fail-Safe Cooling	337

Towing Your Vehicle - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	339
Emergency Towing	339
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	340

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	341
---------------------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

Emergency Towing	341	Repairing Minor Paint Damage	378
		Waxing Your Vehicle	378
Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission		Storing Your Vehicle	
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	342	Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage	379
Emergency Equipment		Removing Your Vehicle From Storage	380
Storing a First Aid Kit	343	Wheel and Tire Information	
Storing a Warning Triangle	343	Using Summer Tires	381
Fuses		Using Winter Tires	381
Fuse Precautions	344	Using Snow Chains	381
Under Hood Fuse Box	344	Tire Care	
Body Control Module Fuse Box	350	Checking the Tire Pressures	382
Identifying Fuse Types	352	Inflating the Tires	382
Fuses – Troubleshooting	353	Tire Pressure Specifications	382
Maintenance		Inspecting the Tire for Damage	384
Maintenance Precautions	354	Tire Rotation	384
Opening and Closing the Hood	354	Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, LHD	356	What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	386
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, RHD	357	Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions	386
Under Hood Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), RHD	358	Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	386
Under Hood Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), LHD	359	Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components	386
Engine Oil	360	Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	387
Coolant	362	Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
12V Battery	366	What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	391
12V Battery – Troubleshooting	369	Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	391
Adjusting the Headlamps	371	Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	391
Exterior Bulbs	372	Viewing the Tire Pressures	391
Interior Bulbs	373		
Vehicle Care			
Cleaning the Exterior	374		
Cleaning the Interior	376		

Table of Contents

Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System	392
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting	392

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire	394
Wheel Nuts	399

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™	400
Engine Specifications - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	401
Vehicle Dimensions	402
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™	403
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	403
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™	404
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)	404
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	405
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBoost™	406
Fuel Tank Capacity - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)	407
Fuel Tank Capacity - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	408
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™	409
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	409
Washer Fluid Specification	410

Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission	410
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission	411
Brake Fluid Specification	411
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification	412

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number	413
Vehicle Identification Plate	413

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle	415
Connected Vehicle Requirements	415
Connected Vehicle Limitations	415
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	415
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	415
Connected Vehicle Settings	416
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting	416

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	418
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password	418
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting	419

Audio System

Audio System Precautions	420
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	420
Selecting the Audio Source	420
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source	420
Adjusting the Volume	420
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off	420

Table of Contents

Switching Repeat Mode On and Off	420
Setting a Memory Preset	421
Muting the Audio	421
Scrolling Through Menu Items	421
Selecting a Menu Item	421
Adjusting the Sound Settings	421
Setting the Clock and Date	421
FM Radio	421
Switching the Display On and Off	422
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	422

Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions	424
Center Display Limitations	424
Status Bar	424
Information On Demand Screen	425
Rebooting the Center Display	425

Voice Interaction

What is Voice Interaction	426
Setting the Wake Word	426
Beginning a Voice Interaction	426
Voice Interaction Examples	426

Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In	428
Alexa Built-In Requirements	428
Signing In to Your Account	428
Using Alexa Built-In	428
Alexa Built-In Settings	428

Phone

Phone Precautions	430
Connecting Your Phone	430
Phone Menu	430
Making and Receiving a Phone Call	432
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	433

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	434
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	434

Apps

App Precautions	435
App Requirements	435
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device	435
Enabling Apps on an Android Device	435
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	435
Switching Android Auto On and Off	436

Navigation

Connected Navigation	437
Accessing Navigation	437
Navigation Map Updates	437
Adjusting the Map	437
Setting a Destination	437
Waypoints	438
Route Guidance	438
Trailer Towing Navigation	438

Geofencing - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What Is Geofencing	440
How Does Geofencing Work	440
Geofencing Precautions	440
Geofencing Limitations	440
Geofencing Indicators	440

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking	442
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking	442
Software Update Settings	443
Software Update Indicators	444

Table of Contents

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset445

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Authorized Dealer Directory446

Service Intervals - Turkey

Service Intervals452

Customer Information

Rollover Warning453

Third Party Software Copyright
Acknowledgment453

Declaration of Conformity453

REACH453

Radio Frequency Certification Labels
.....454

Replacement Parts Recommendation
.....491

Mobile Communications Equipment
.....492

eCall User Information493

End User License Agreement496

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this publication. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options

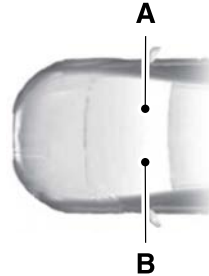
Note: This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Illustrations

Note: Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

Location of Components

This publication could qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

Introduction

SPECIAL NOTICES - TURKEY

Consumer* Information

*Consumer: Real or legal person acting for commercial or non-occupational purposes. If a driver drives his vehicle for commercial or occupational purposes, whether on full-time or part-time basis, he may not be evaluated as a "Consumer" under the legislation.

In the event a vehicle is purchased subject to Consumer Warranty terms but driven for commercial or occupational purposes thereafter or if purchased subject to Commercial Warranty Terms and then driven out of commercial or occupational purposes, COMMERCIAL WARRANTY TERMS shall apply under general statutory provisions. This shall bind Driver and other persons who take over such vehicle. Please see Ford Warranty Terms for detailed information.

Optional rights granted to consumers pursuant to Consumer Protection Law no. 6502 and Regulation for Introductory and Owner Manuals published at the Official Gazette dated 13.06.2014 and no. 29029 and information related to authorities to which consumers may file complaints and objections are as follows:

I. Optional Rights of Consumers

- 1) If merchandise is understood to be defective consumer may exercise one of following rights:
 - a) Reneging on contract by notifying that he is ready to return sold item,
 - b) Retaining sold item and asking discount from sales price pro rata to defect,
 - c) In case excessive expense is not required, asking free of charge repair of sold item, all expenses at seller's account,
 - d) If possible, asking replacement of sold item with an equivalent free of defects,

you can use one of these rights. Seller shall be liable to fulfill such request preferred by consumer.

2) Rights of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects may also be exercised against manufacturer or importer. Seller, manufacturer and importer shall be severally liable for fulfillment of rights set out in this clause. Manufacturer or importer shall not be held liable if they prove that defect has arisen after merchandise is placed on the market by them.

3) If free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects would bring along disproportional inconvenience for seller, consumer may exercise one of rights of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect. During determination of disproportionality, matters such as value of merchandise free of defects, importance of defect and whether resorting to other optional rights would create any problems for consumer shall be considered.

4) In the event either right of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects is chosen, such request must be fulfilled within maximum thirty business days from notification of this request to seller, manufacturer or importer. However, concerning merchandise included at the list attachment of regulation issued as per article 58 of Consumer Protection Law no. 6502, consumer's request for free of charge repair shall be fulfilled within maximum repair period set out at the regulation. Otherwise, consumer shall be free to exercise other optional rights.

5) In cases consumer chooses right of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect, full price paid or amount of discount from price shall be promptly refunded to consumer.

Introduction

6) Any expenses incurred because of exercising optional rights shall be covered by the party fulfilling the right chosen by consumer. Consumer, along with one of such optional rights, may also claim compensation as per provisions of Turkish Code of Obligations dated 11/01/2011 and no. 6098.

II. Consumer Complaints and Objections

Consumers may file applications regarding complaints and objections to consumer courts and consumer arbitration committees in accordance with arrangements provided at Consumer Protection Law no. 6502.

Manufacturer or Importer

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.S.
Akpınar Mah. Hasan Basri Cad. No: 2
34885 Sancaktepe/Istanbul
Trade Registration No: 73232 - Istanbul
Tel: 0.216 564 71 00
Fax: 0.216 564 73 85
www.fordotosan.com.tr

Service Life

The service life of this vehicle is 10 years.

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Data Privacy

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 415).

Note: The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 435).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

Data Privacy

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 445).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off, or deactivation of the high-voltage battery. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion storage type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

Environment

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

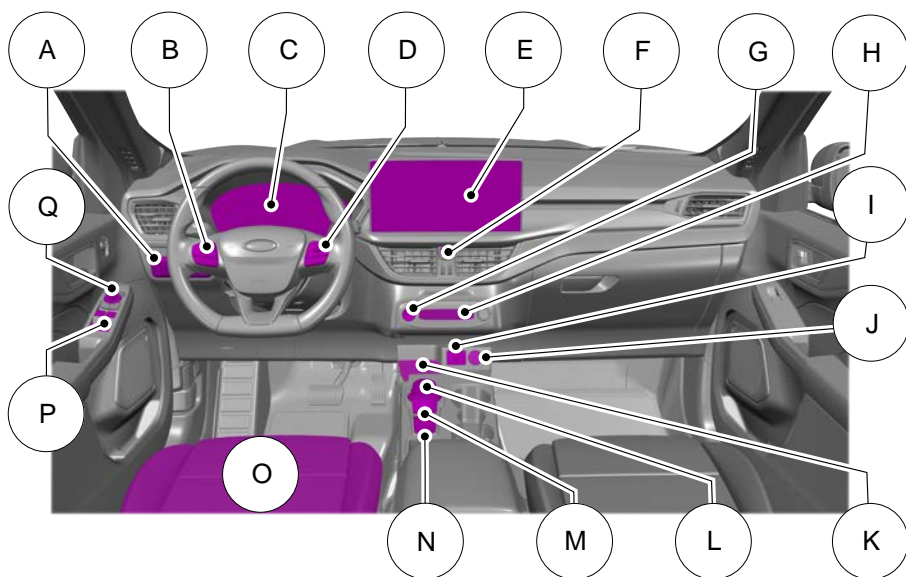
France Only



Points de collecte sur www.quefairedemesdechets.fr et www.ford.fr

Visual Search

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - LHD

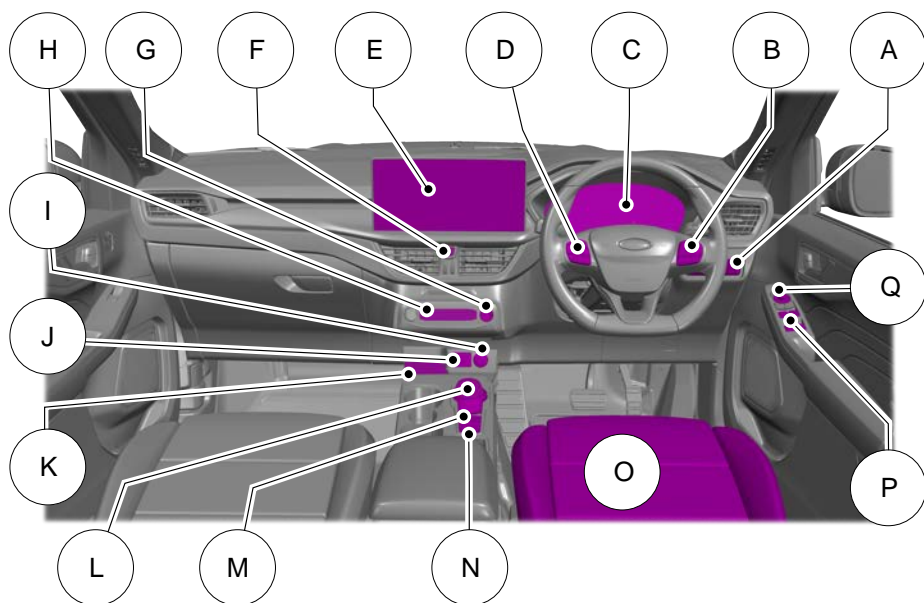


- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 80).
- B See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 256).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 106). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 105). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 104).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).
- E See **Center Display Precautions** (page 424).
- F See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 332).
- G See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 149).
- H See **Switching Parking Aid On and Off** (page 235).
- I See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 143).
- J See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 145).
- K See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 147).

Visual Search

- L See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 209). See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 209).
- M See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 218). See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 218).
- N See **Switching Auto Hold On and Off** (page 227).
- O See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 128).
- P See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 95).
- Q See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 99).

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - RHD



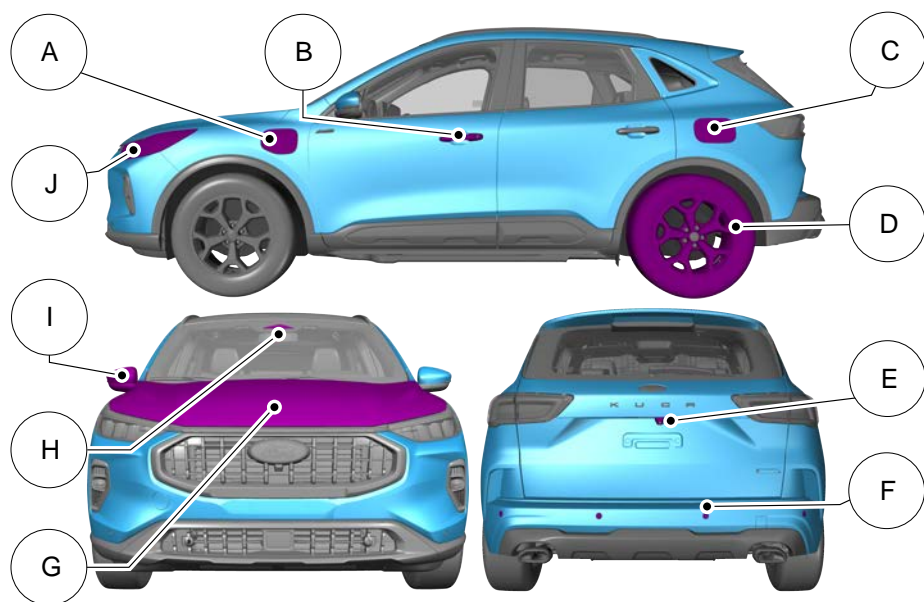
- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 80).
- B See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 112).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 106). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 105). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 104).

Visual Search

- D See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 256).
- E See **Center Display Precautions** (page 424).
- F See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 332).
- G See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 149).
- H See **Switching Parking Aid On and Off** (page 235).
- I See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 145).
- J See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 143).
- K See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 147).
- L See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 209). See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 209).
- M See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 218). See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 218).
- N See **Switching Auto Hold On and Off** (page 227).
- O See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 128).
- P See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 95).
- Q See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 99).

Visual Search

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



- A See **Charging Your Vehicle Precautions** (page 189).
- B See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 52).
- C See **Fuel and Refueling Precautions** (page 171).
- D See **Viewing the Tire Pressures** (page 391).
- E See **Rear View Camera Guide Lines** (page 241).
- F See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 235).
- G See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 354).
- H See **What Is Pre-Collision Assist** (page 298).
- I See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 99).
- J See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 80).

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

⚠ WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

⚠ WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

⚠ WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

⚠ WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

⚠ WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

⚠ WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

⚠ WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

⚠ WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Child Safety

WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

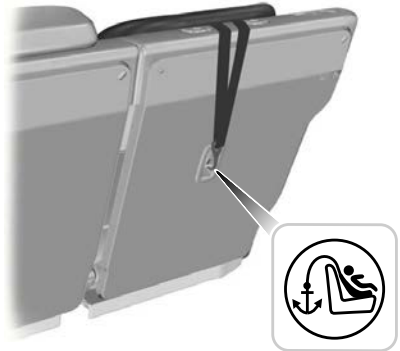
Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



Top tether anchor points are on the back of the rear seat.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	15–25 kg (33–55lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Rear seats. ²	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

² Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	F, G ¹	E ¹	C, D, E ¹	A, B, B ¹	C, D ¹

Child Safety

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
	Fixture.	L1, L2 ¹	R1 ¹	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ¹	F2, F2X, F3 ¹	R2X, R2, R3 ¹
	Size type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

¹The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹

¹The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Size Class Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
40–83 cm (15–35 in) 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pebble 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base) or seatbelt only.
40–105 cm (15–40 in) 0–17.5 kg (0–39 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pearl 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base).
100–150 cm (40–60 in) 15–36 kg (33–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix M i-Size. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar region to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion



WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Child Safety

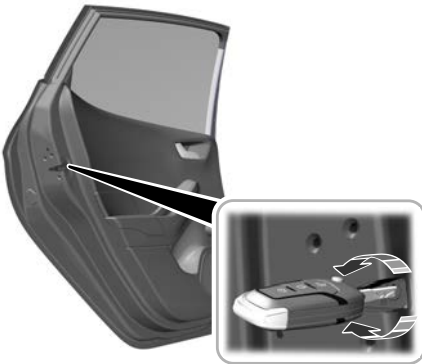


Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL CHILD PROOF LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE CHILD PROOF LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

The child safety lock control is on the driver door.



Press the control to switch the child safety locks on. Press the control again to switch them off.

Note: You cannot use the rear power window controls if you switch the child safety locks on.

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY LOCK INDICATOR



A LED (light emitting diode) on the child safety lock control illuminates when you switch them on. If the LED flashes, try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the LED continues to flash, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Child Lock malfunction See manual	Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

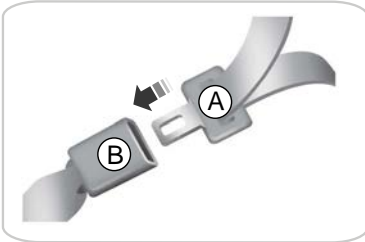


WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelts.



- A Seatbelt tongue.
- B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.

3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.



When in use, place the rear seatbelts in the belt guides on the outermost seat backrests.

Unfastening the Seatbelts

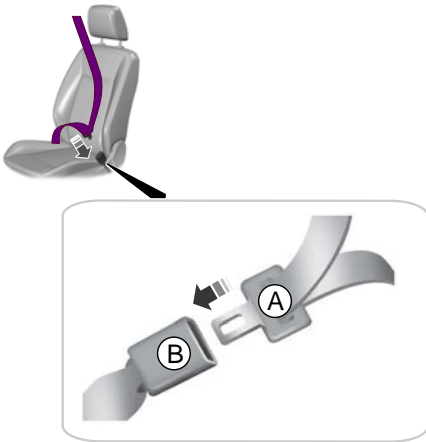
1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelts.

Seatbelts



- A Seatbelt tongue.
- B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.



When in use, place the rear seatbelts in the belt guides on the outermost seat backrests.

Using a Sliding Clip (If Equipped)



Slide the clips to the lowest position before fastening the rear outer seatbelts. The seatbelts must fit tightly across the pelvis to avoid any slack.

Note: When the seatbelts are not in use, slide the clips to a higher position to avoid rattling.

Unfastening the Seatbelts

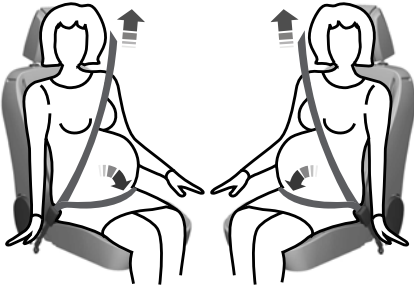
1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Seatbelts

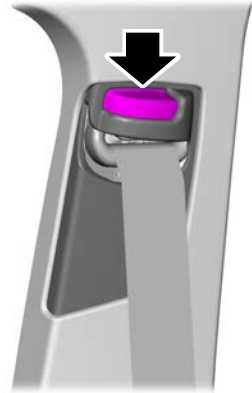


Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



WARNING: Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E183582

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

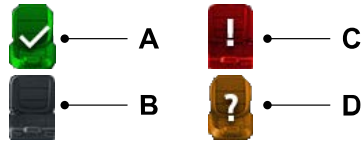
The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, this feature may not be available.*

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Status Information**.
3. Select **Seat belts**.

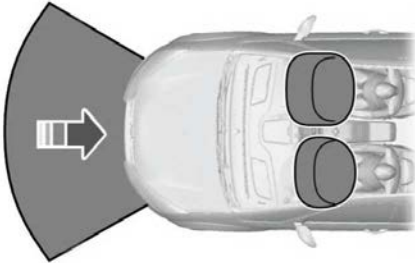
SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front seat backrests, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

Airbags

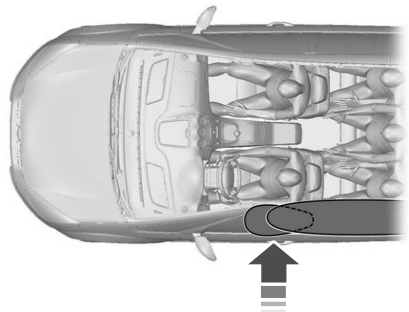


The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Airbags



WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

The passenger airbag indicator shows if the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled or disabled.

Note: When your vehicle is on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



It illuminates when the airbag is on.



It illuminates when the airbag is off.



SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Passenger airbag**.
4. Switch **Passenger airbag** on or off.

Airbags

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

Pedestrian Alert System

WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.

The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 493).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, or to deactivate the high voltage battery, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 23).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

Note: *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.


3. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Note: Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.

4. Speak to the operator.

Note: After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS

 **WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency Call System malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

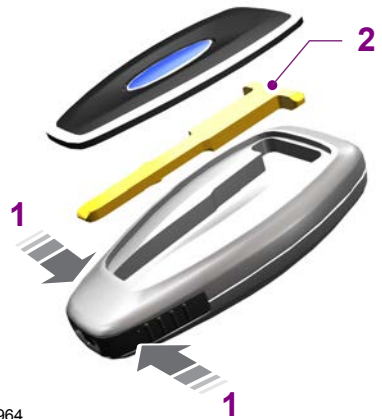
Note: Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE

The passive key contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash.

Note: We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

Keys and Remote Controls



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

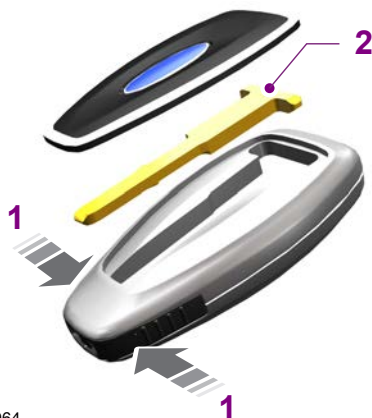


CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

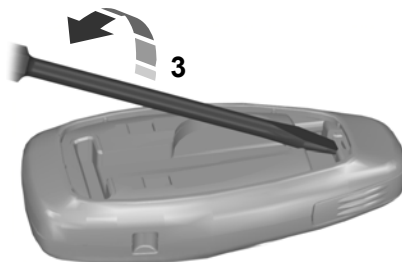
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.

2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



E105362

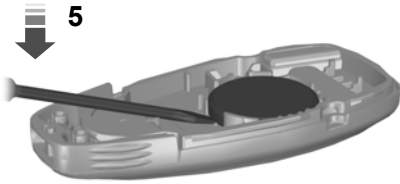
3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.

Keys and Remote Controls



E125860

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Locking the Doors

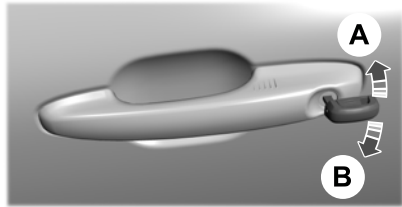


Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 58).

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

If there is a power door lock fault, use the key blade to lock and unlock the driver door.



- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

You can individually lock or unlock all other doors. See **Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 53).

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirm that your vehicle has double locked.

Doors and Locks

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE



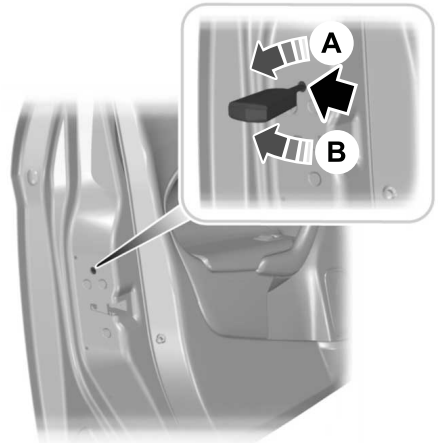
WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if all the doors are closed.

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.

INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

If there is a power door lock fault you can use the key blade to lock and unlock the doors.



A Lock.

B Unlock.

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

Doors and Locks

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you press the unlock button once.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.

You can also change between the unlocking modes in the information display.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Press **Unlocking**.
5. Press a setting.

DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR

HOW DOES THE DOOR LOCK SWITCH INHIBITOR WORK

The door lock switch inhibitor is a theft protection feature that prevents someone unlocking the vehicle from inside using the power door lock control switch.

When you lock your vehicle with the remote control, the power door lock control switch does no longer operate after 20 seconds.

Note: *You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore the power door lock control switch function.*

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

Note: *Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.*

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

Doors and Locks

2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Switch **Auto Unlock** on or off.

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a feature that warns you when you try to lock your vehicle but it has not locked. The warning occurs with a double chirp from the horn.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

A Mislock warning is performed if the following occurs:

- Any front door is open and you try to lock your vehicle once.
- Any door, the liftgate or the hood is open and you try to lock your vehicle twice within three seconds from the outside.

Note: *If any rear door, the liftgate or the hood is open and you try to lock your vehicle once, the direction indicators do not flash, but there is no warning chirp from the horn.*

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not warn you if your vehicle left behind unlocked.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

Autorelock is a feature that centrally locks all doors after an unintended unlock.

Autorelock Requirements

Autorelock locks all the doors after:

1. All doors are closed and locked.
2. The vehicle is unlocked with remote control or intelligent access (key free), if equipped.
3. No door is opened within 45 seconds.

Note: *Autorelock only relocks to central lock and alarm returns to its previous state.*

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the vehicle on and remains on if any door, the hood or the liftgate is open.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?

- Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

Keyless Entry

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle once.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors with touching the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle twice within three seconds or from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you open the passenger door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

You can change between the unlocking modes on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Press **Unlocking**.
5. Select a setting.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.



Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The direction indicators flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Keyless Entry

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over, you can lock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.



Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.*

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 58). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Why does the passive key not work?

- The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Easy Entry and Exit

HOW DOES EASY ENTRY AND EXIT WORK

This feature moves the driver seat rearward up to 5 cm (2 in) when you switch the ignition off. The driver seat returns to its previous position when you switch the ignition on.

SWITCHING EASY ENTRY AND EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Easy Entry/Exit**.

If you press any adjustment or memory button when in easy exit mode, the system cancels the operation.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

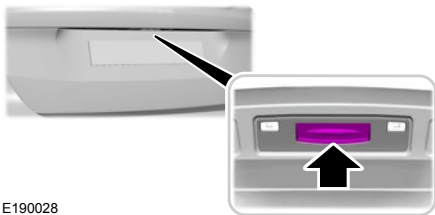
LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



E190028

1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate using the outside control button.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate




E291353


A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.


Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*


Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

 **WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Press the button on the instrument panel.

Note: Make sure that you shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or completely stop the vehicle for manual transmission.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

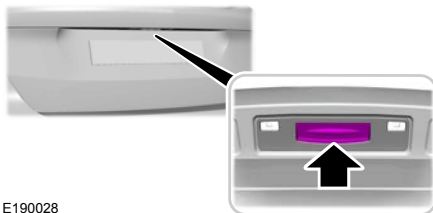
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using an authorized device.

Note: If an authorized device is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate control button.



E190028

2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

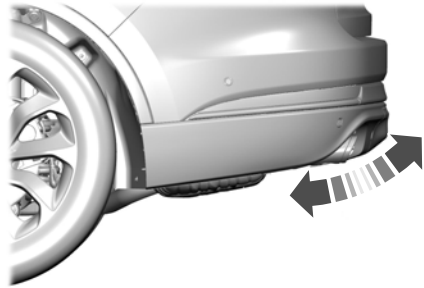
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



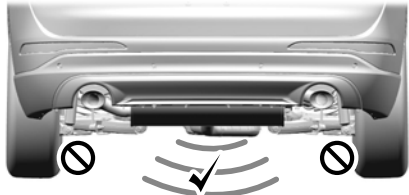
3. The liftgate opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones

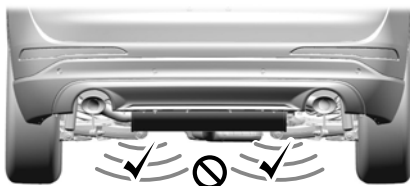
Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.

Note: Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Note: Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the passive key away from the rear bumper detection area.

SWITCHING THE POWER LIFTGATE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Power Liftgate**.
4. Select a setting.

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

Note: You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

Note: You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

Note: You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.

Note: The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press the button on the instrument panel.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

Note: Make sure that you shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or completely stop the vehicle for manual transmission.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

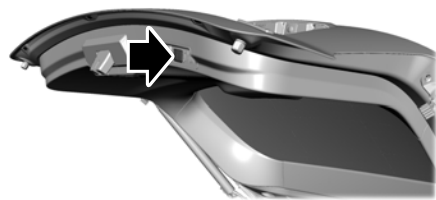
Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



E291351

Press and release the liftgate button.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.



Press the button twice within three seconds. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

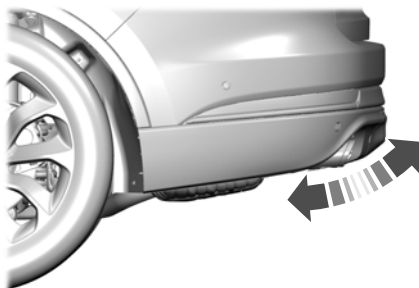
Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the remote control within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



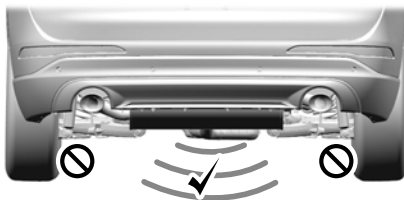
3. The liftgate closes.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones

Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.

Note: Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

Note: Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

Note: Selections will vary depending on region or options.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.

Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Power Liftgate

LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why won't my power liftgate function?

- It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes.
- Make sure the power liftgate is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate.
- If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

Security

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.*

HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.

It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

Security

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: Do not cover the interior sensors.

Note: If you set the cabin comfort level for your departure time with the alarm armed, the interior sensors deactivate for the duration of the cabin preconditioning to avoid a false alarm.

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM (If Equipped)

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, motion sensors on and motion sensors off.

Motion Sensors On

Motion sensors on is the standard setting. In motion sensors on, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: Do not arm the alarm with motion sensors on if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Motion Sensors Off

In motion sensors off, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: The alarm security level will switch back to motion sensors on once the power is turned on.

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Press **Motion Sensors**.
5. Press a setting.

Security

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Alarm System Turn off motion sensors?	Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Switch **Ask on Exit** on or off.

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm system	

Security

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 128).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen near the climate controls. The button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

Note: The vehicle must be running to use the heated steering wheel.

Note: A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.

Note: It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time you switched your vehicle off.

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

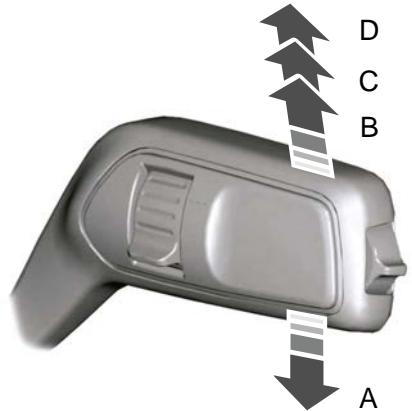
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 77). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 77). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 78).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF

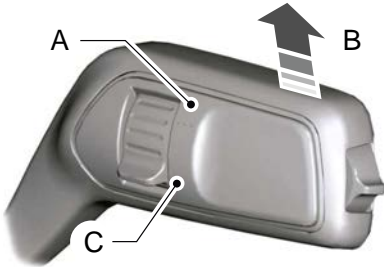


- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent Wipe.
- C Normal Wipe.
- D High-speed Wipe

Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

Wipers and Washers

Intermittent wipe



- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

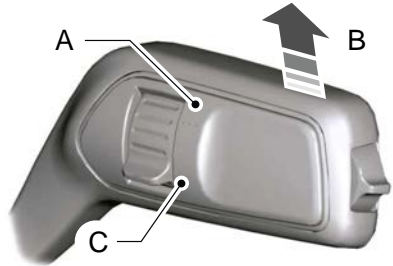
Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. In this case if you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

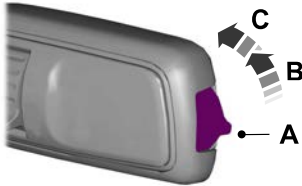
Use the rotary control to set the sensitivity of the autowipers.

With the sensitivity level you can adjust the frequency of the wipes depending on the rain intensity.

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Wipers and Washers

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Rear window wiper off.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Continuous wipe.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

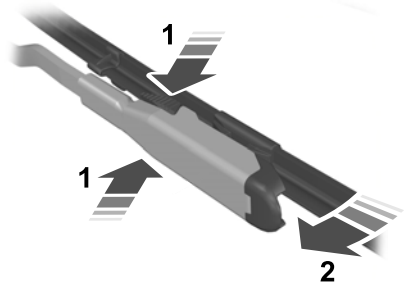


Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

Note: Do not manually move the wiper arms when the vehicle is on or in accessory mode, this could damage the wiper motor.



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

Wipers and Washers

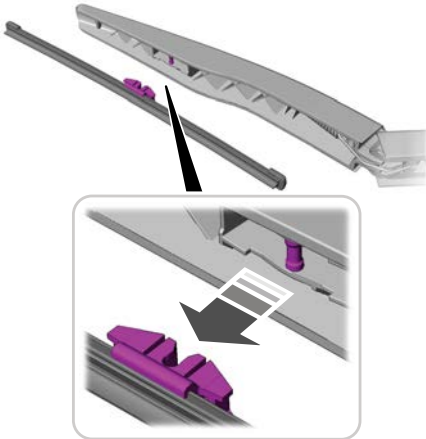
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. When you switch it off the wipers finish the current washer request.

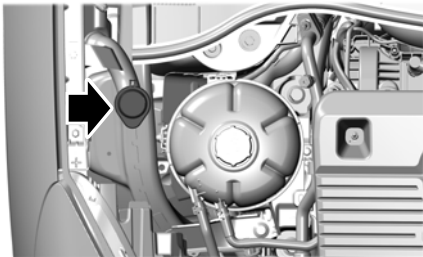
Wipers and Washers

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer.

ADDING WASHER FLUID



1. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
2. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 410).
3. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

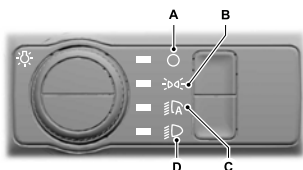
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 77). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 77). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 78).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



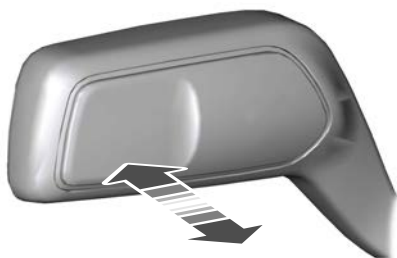
- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELING

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:

Exterior Lighting



1. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

Note: Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

Note: Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Exterior Lighting

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Headlamp Delay**.
5. Select a setting.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

To switch both sides on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
3. Set the lighting control to the off position to switch the parking lamps off.


Exterior Lighting

Note: Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

To switch one side on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.



2.  Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.
3. Move the lever back to a neutral position to switch the lamps off.

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF



WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.


Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or the front fog lamps.

USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Note: The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

Front Fog Lamps Indicator




It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the low beam headlamps or the front fog lamps are on.

2.  Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

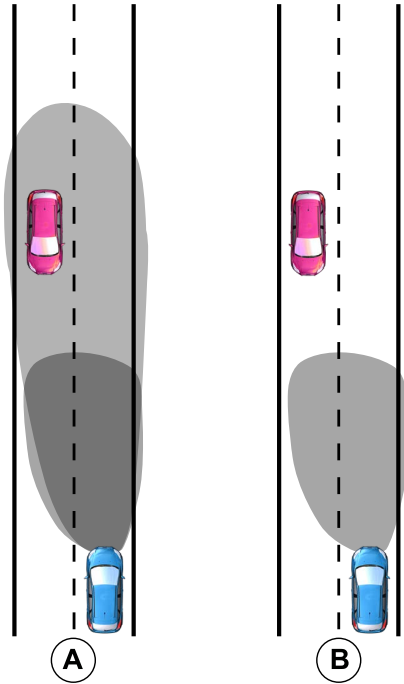
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 416). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

Exterior Lighting



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.*

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto High Beam** on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Exterior Lighting

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

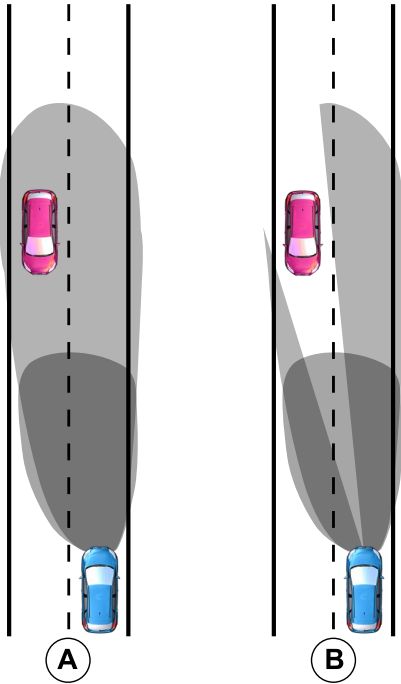
GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Glare free high beam control enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 416). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

Exterior Lighting



- A Without glare free high beam control.
- B With glare free high beam control.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

⚠ WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.

⚠ WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

⚠ WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Exterior Lighting

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

SWITCHING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Glare-Free Lighting** on or off.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING WORK



WARNING: Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

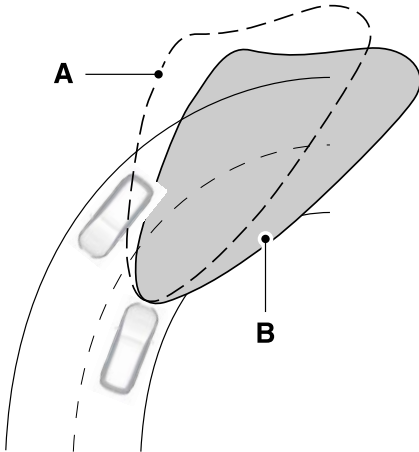
Adaptive front lighting adapts when you are steering around a curve, or if the camera detects lane markings indicating a curve or traffic signs indicating an intersection or a roundabout.

Note: Set the lighting control to the *autolamps* position to use adaptive front lighting.

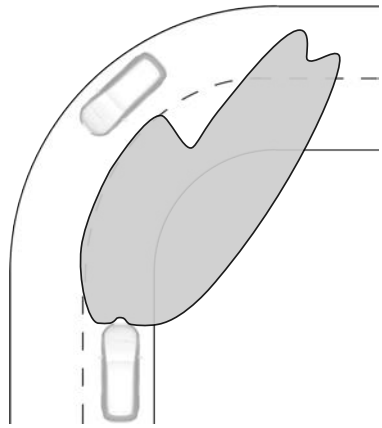
Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 416). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

Exterior Lighting

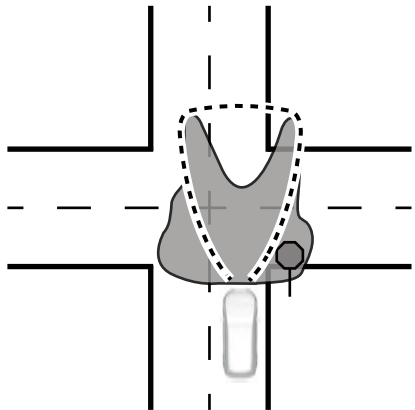
Steering Around a Curve



Camera Detects Lane Markings

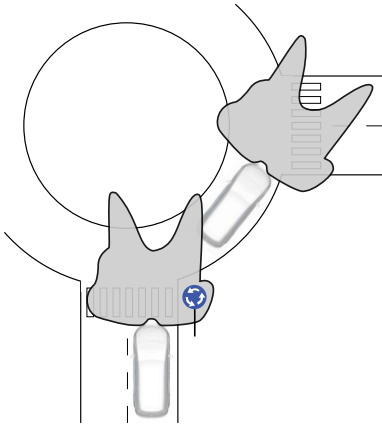


Camera Detects Traffic Signs



- A Without adaptive front lighting.
- B With adaptive front lighting.

Exterior Lighting

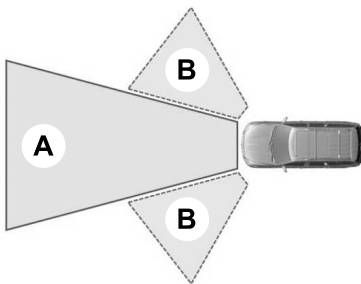


E266972

The camera only detects traffic signs if your vehicle speed is below 50 km/h (31 mph).

Speed Dependent Lamps

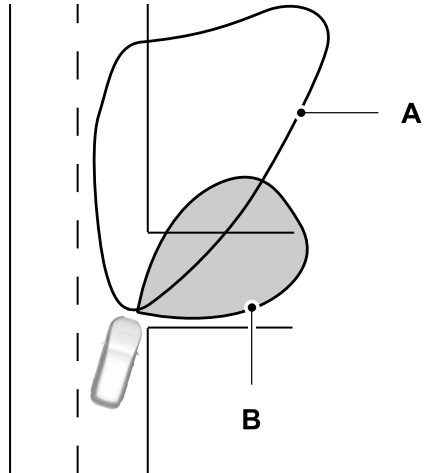
Provides additional light on the road depending on your vehicle speed and steering wheel input.



- A Standard low beam.
- B Additional lighting.

Static Bending Lamps

Illuminates the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel.



- A Headlamp beam.
- B Static bending lamp beam.

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Adaptive Headlamps Setup**.
5. Select a setting.

Exterior Lighting

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	Displays when the front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	Displays if the front camera sensor malfunctions. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Advanced front lighting features Temporarily unavailable See manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check adaptive headlamps See manual	Displays when adaptive front lighting malfunctions. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Interior Lighting

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Note: Press the edge of the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamp off before switching the ignition off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

Note: If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



Interior Lighting

AMBIENT LIGHTING

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Ambient Light**.
4. Switch **Ambient Light** on or off.

ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

Drag the slider left or right.

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Windows

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to open.

Note: *The moonroof stops in the vent position.*

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Open** on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 96).*

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Close** on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the window control switch within five seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Windows

RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open. Keep the switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the switch held for a few seconds.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



WARNING: When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or when you shift into reverse (R).

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

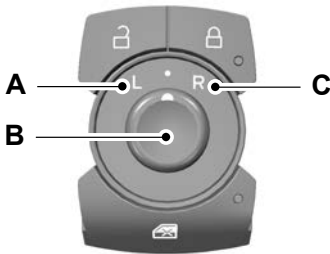
Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: MEMORY FUNCTION



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror position.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror position.

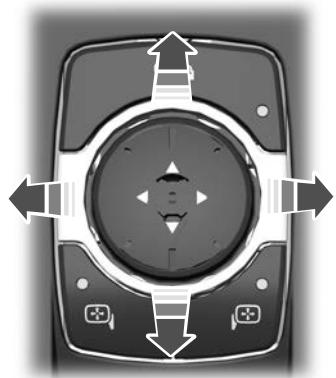
ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MEMORY FUNCTION



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Right-hand mirror.



To adjust your mirrors, switch your vehicle on, with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

Exterior Mirrors

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTO FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: *This feature requires you to switch the exterior mirrors auto-fold on.*



For tight parking conditions, press the control switch to fold the mirrors.

Press the control switch again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: *Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control switch again.*

The left and right-hand mirrors move at different rates. For example, one mirror may stop while the other one continues to move. This is normal.

If you press the control switch to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: *The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.*

Note: *If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.*

Switching Auto-fold On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on and off.

Loose Mirror

If you manually fold your power-folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the mirrors, perform the following steps:

1. By hand, fold or retract both mirrors.
2. Using the power folding/power telescoping mirror control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.
3. Operate the power folding or power telescoping mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS



Press the button to fold the mirrors.

Press the button again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: *The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.*

Note: *If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.*

Note: *Do not manually fold or unfold power folding mirrors.*

Exterior Mirrors

Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly, even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Moonroof

OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUNSHADE

Opening the Sunshade



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the sunshade and get caught in a closing sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof.

The sunshade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the rear of the control.

Closing the Sunshade



WARNING: When closing the sunshade, verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the sunshade. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, press the switch a second time and reverse the sunshade immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The sun shade operates independently of the moonroof.

The sunshade controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the front of the control.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF

Opening the Moonroof



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the moonroof and could become trapped in a closing moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch open.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof.

Moonroof

Closing the Moonroof



WARNING: When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the moonroof immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console and have one-touch close.

To stop the motion during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

VENTING THE MOONROOF



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



With the glass in closed position, press and release the front of the control to vent the moonroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

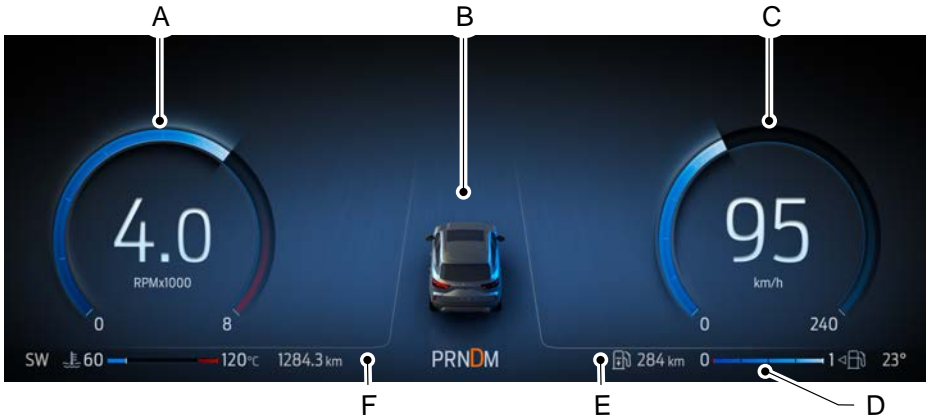
The moonroof stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

OVERRIDING MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

Press and hold the close switch within two seconds after the moonroof comes to a stop.

Instrument Cluster

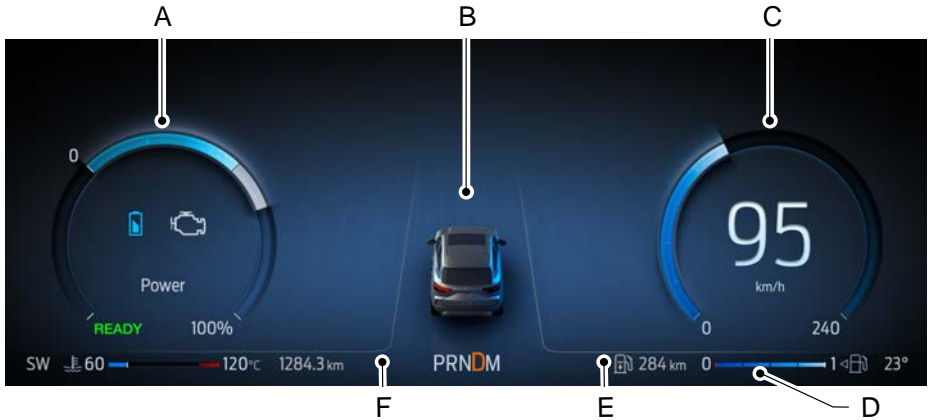
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



- A Tachometer.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Distance to empty.
- F Information bar.

Instrument Cluster

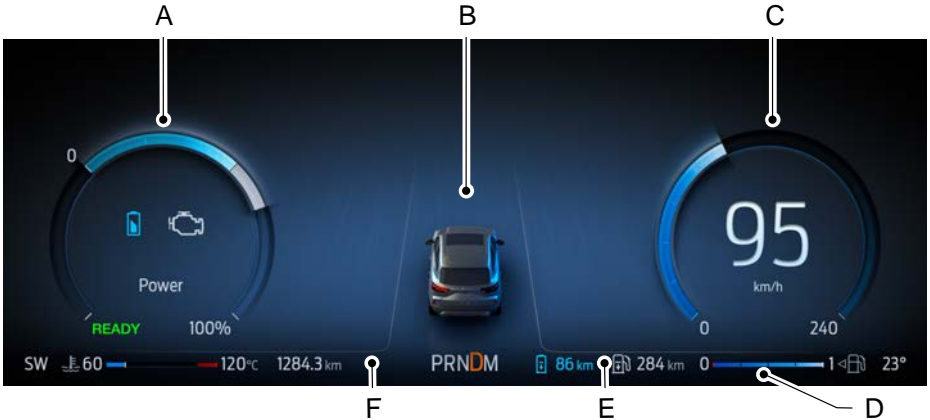
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)



- A Power gauge.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Distance to empty.
- F Information bar.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



- A Power gauge.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Vehicle driving range.
- F Information bar.

TACHOMETER - EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Indicates the engine speed.

POWER GAUGE

The power gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. The high voltage battery power and engine power contributions are distinguished by color and added together to indicate total power to the wheels. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

Instrument Cluster

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

FUEL GAUGE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi).

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by such as:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

Note: *It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery or fill your tank.*

Note: *Electric range is lower in cold temperatures due to reduced energy capacity in the high voltage battery. Set a departure time and cabin temperature to maintain battery temperature for best range and performance. See **Setting the Charging Schedule and Preferences** (page 198).*

Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Instrument Cluster

Electric Range

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

WHAT IS THE INFORMATION BAR

The information bar displays information related to the ambient air temperature, odometer, compass, indicators and warning lamps.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Battery



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake System



It illuminates when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your

vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is released. If the parking brake is released, this indicates low brake fluid level or the brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Indicators may vary depending on region.*

Door Ajar



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door is open.

Electric Park Brake



It illuminates or flashes when the electric parking brake requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Engine or Motor Coolant Temperature



If it illuminates, safely stop your vehicle and switch your vehicle off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Fasten Seatbelt



It illuminates and a tone sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

High Voltage Electric System Failure



It illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Hood Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Liftgate Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the liftgate is not completely closed.

Low Beam Warning



It illuminates when the low beam headlamp requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Low Fuel Level



It illuminates when the fuel level is low.

Low Tire Pressure Warning



It illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If illuminated, check your tire pressure as soon as possible. If it begins to flash at any time, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Low Washer Fluid



It illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the engine is off, this is normal operation. If it illuminates when the engine is on this indicates that the emission control system requires service. If it flashes, have your vehicle checked immediately. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 153).

Oil Pressure



It illuminates when the engine oil pressure is low.

Powertrain Fault



It illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Vehicle Plugged In (If Equipped)



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Adaptive Cruise Control



See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 253).

Automatic High Beam Control



See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 85).

Auto Hold



See **Auto Hold** (page 227).



Auto-Start-Stop



See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 165).

Blind Spot Monitor



See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 290).

Cruise Control



See **Cruise Control** (page 251).

EV Charge



See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes** (page 272).

EV Later



See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes** (page 272).

EV Now



See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes** (page 272).

Front Airbag



See **Airbags** (page 41).

Front Fog Lamps



See **Using the Front Fog Lamps** (page 83).

High Beam



See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 80).

Lamps On



See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 80).

Ready to Drive



See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 157).

Stability Control



See **Stability Control** (page 231). See **Traction Control** (page 229).



Instrument Cluster

Turn Signal



See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 82).

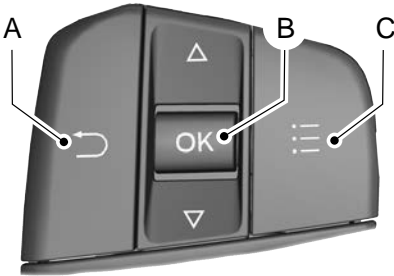
Instrument Cluster Display

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Menu Button

Press to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

Status Indicator



A square symbol indicates feature status. It illuminates blue when a feature is on and does not illuminate when a feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Trip/energy
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip Computer
Audio
Navigation
Phone
Settings
Head-Up Display (HUD)

Instrument Cluster Display

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the **OK** button.

Note: *The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.*

Configure MyView
Power Distribution
Trailer Light Status
Calm Screen
Trip Computer 1
Trip Computer 2
This Trip
Electric Economy
Fuel Economy
Eco Behaviour
EV Coach
Tyre Pressure
Battery Charge
Driver Assistance

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.*

Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display Settings**.
4. Select **Gauge Style**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

This display comes with an instant fuel economy gauge, along with the average fuel economy. The gauge continuously averages the fuel economy since your last reset.

For plug-in hybrid vehicles, the system includes both the electric only and the hybrid operation in the calculation. More electric only driving results in a greater average fuel economy.

When the gasoline engine is off, changes from the instant fuel economy gauge to an electric driving message.

Note: *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

Note: *Fuel economy display is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 113).*

Instrument Cluster Display

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: *Press and hold the OK button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

EV COACH

EV coach can help you get the most out of your vehicle's electric driving capabilities.

Note: *EV coach is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 113).*

When you are accelerating or maintaining speed you see a blue or white solid bar indicating vehicle power. You may also see a blue rectangular box which shows the power level at which the engine turns on.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is blue. This means you are in electric operation and the engine is off.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means you are in hybrid operation with a combination of the electric motor and the engine providing vehicle power.

When you are decelerating with either your foot off the accelerator pedal or on the brake pedal, a green or white solid bar displays indicating the power being used to slow down your vehicle. You may also see a green rectangular box which shows the amount of power that can be recaptured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is green. This means that the regenerative braking system is being used to efficiently slow your vehicle down and return the maximum percentage of energy to the high voltage battery.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means both the regenerative braking system and conventional braking system are being used.

ELECTRIC ECONOMY

This screen shows your average driving distance per kilowatt-hour of electricity used on your plug-in hybrid vehicle. The value is calculated only when your available electric range is being used and the gasoline engine is off.

Distance per full charge is also shown. This is an estimate of the electric range you would have if you plugged in and fully charged your vehicle right now. The higher your electric economy, the higher your distance per full charge.

Your electric economy is affected by your driving style and route, climate control use, outside temperature and other factors. Best economy is achieved with mild to moderate acceleration and braking, moderate speeds and low climate control usage.

Instrument Cluster Display

Note: *Electric economy is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 113).*

BATTERY CHARGE

Displays a high voltage battery gauge and an estimate of available electric driving range. The high voltage battery gauge displays the total amount of charge associated with your available electric only driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge (plugging your vehicle in). When the fill reaches empty the powertrain system will automatically switch to hybrid operation. See **How Does a Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work** (page 159).

BRAKE COACH

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.

Note: *While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.*

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 112).

TRIP SUMMARY

The trip summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip screen. See **Trip Data** (page 117).

VEHICLE CHARGING STATUS

The vehicle charge status displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle when plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your charge settings through the touchscreen.

Personalized Settings

CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Language**.
4. Press a setting.

Note: *Available languages vary by region.*

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Measurement Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Temperature unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Tyre Pressure Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

Trip Computer

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

Note: *This trip is a selectable screen. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 117).*

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 113).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen you want to reset.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TRIP DATA

Trip 1 and 2

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy and total trip distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off.

Note: *Trip 1 and 2 are selectable screens. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 117).*

This Trip

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This Trip resets each time you start your vehicle.

Head Up Display

WHAT IS THE HEAD UP DISPLAY

The system displays information on a display screen in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

SWITCHING THE HEAD UP DISPLAY ON AND OFF

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.

2. Select **Head-Up Display (HUD)**.
3. Switch **Head-Up Display (HUD)** on or off.

HEAD UP DISPLAY SETTINGS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Head-Up Display (HUD)**.
3. Select **Adjustment**.

Menu Item	Action
Adjustment	Press the OK button.
Position	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the OK button.2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical position of the blue frame.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Make sure that you can see all of the blue frame.• Do not physically move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
Brightness	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the OK button.2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the brightness of the display screen.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The system adjusts the brightness based on how dark it is. If you set the brightness to a high level, the system reduces the brightness at night.
Vertical size	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the OK button.2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical size of the display screen.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• A small vertical size could be more suitable if you sit in a high position.

Head Up Display

Note: When you save a memory preset position, your current HUD settings are also saved to that memory preset position. See **Memory Function** (page 141).

HEAD UP DISPLAY INDICATORS



The indicator displays in the instrument cluster display.

Note: The head up display indicator could illuminate to supplement an information message.

HEAD UP DISPLAY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEAD UP DISPLAY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Heads-up display System malfunction See manual	The system is malfunctioning or something is obstructing the display. Make sure that the head up display is free from obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Head-up display To position use the information display	Press the button on the steering wheel or center console. The head up display menu appears in the instrument cluster display. Make sure the blue frame is fully visible. Do not manually move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

Remote Start

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

REMOTE START PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

Note: Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Remote Start** on or off.

Note: To remote start with FordPass, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 415).

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

Note: The turn signal lamps flash twice.

Note: The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

Note: The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

Note: The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

Note: A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

REMOTE START SETTINGS

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.

Remote Start

5. Press a setting.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press a setting.

Climate Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: When maximum defrost is on, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

Note: In certain conditions, when you drive in EV Now mode, to enable maximum defrost you have to select either EV Later or EV Auto mode. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRIC HEATER ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to switch the electric heater on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Note: Disabling the system helps maximize your driving range.

Climate Control

Note: The system does not work in some climate control modes.

Note: This button does not switch off the climate control system.

Note: In certain conditions, for example warm weather, the system could not activate or could run with reduced performance when switched on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature controls on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button.

Climate Control

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button.

Note: When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Climate Control

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.

Climate Control

2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Interior Air Quality

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

LOCATING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

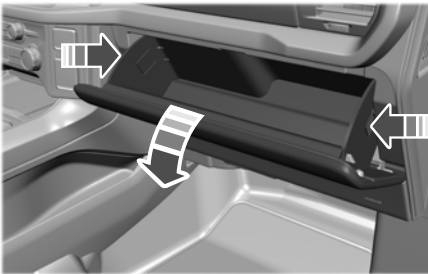
REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

To remove the lower glove compartment and access the filter:

1. Open the glove compartment.



2. Press the tab on each side.
3. Fully lower the glove compartment.
4. Pull the glove compartment toward you.

REFRESHING THE INTERIOR AIR

AUTOMATICALLY REFRESHING THE INTERIOR AIR

If the cabin air recirculates for longer than 35 minutes, the system refreshes the cabin air. It returns to the previous setting after a short period of time.

Refreshing the Interior Air Upon Start

The system may flow fresh air into the cabin and out through cabin exhaust vents when starting your vehicle under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle has been off for more than 30 minutes.
- The temperature inside your vehicle is higher than 24°C (75.2°F).

Ignition Start	Remote Start
The climate control system positions the air inlet door for outside air entry for approximately one minute. You may choose to turn on the climate control front blower at this time to help reduce odors.	The climate control system pulls outside air into the cabin and pushes cabin air out through cabin exhaust vents for approximately one minute.

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



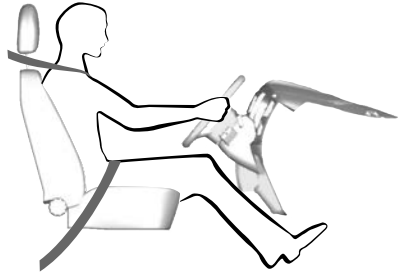
WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION




WARNING: Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.


Front Seats


Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 8-WAY MANUAL SEAT

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

 **WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

 **WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

 **WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints


1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

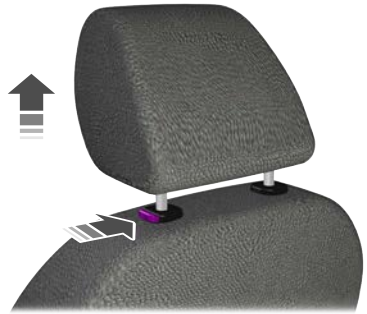
1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.

3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

REMOVING THE HEADRESTRAINT


 **WARNING:** Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



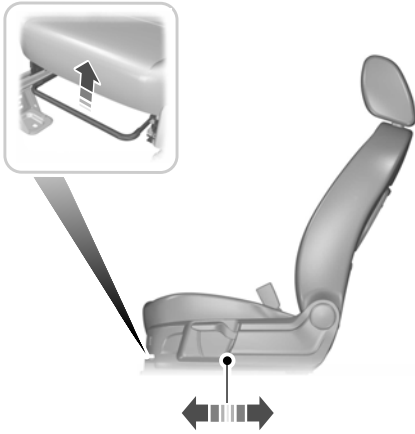
2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

 **WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.

Front Seats

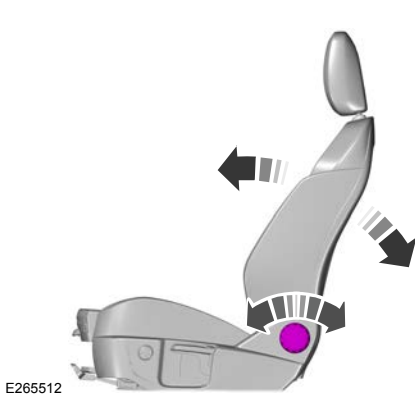
ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



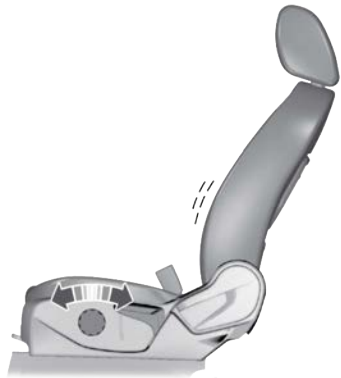
E265513

ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



E265512



Front Seats

POWER SEATS

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again releases it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

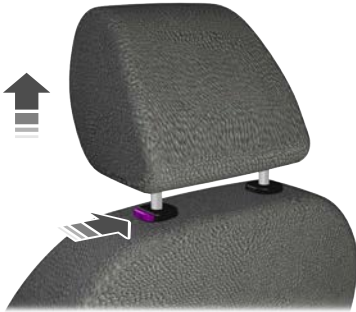
REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

Front Seats



2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

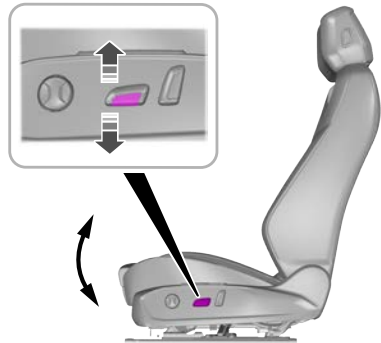
⚠ WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION

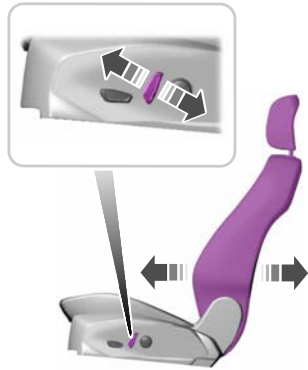
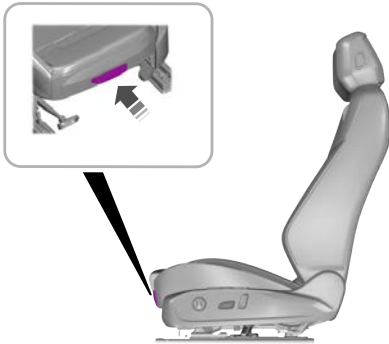
Adjusting the Seat Cushion Angle



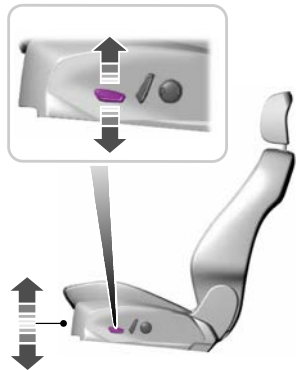
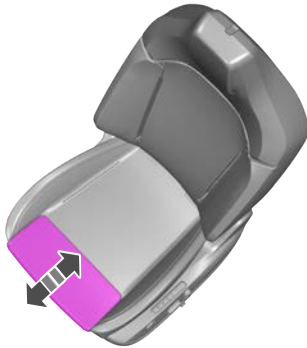
Front Seats

Adjusting the Seat Cushion Length

(If Equipped)



ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



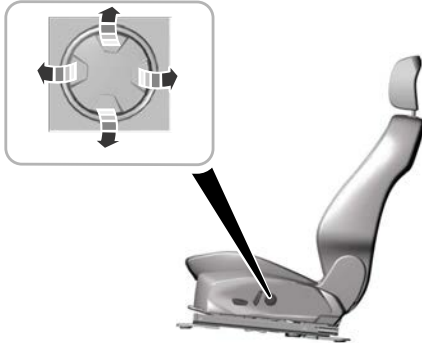
ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: Reclining the seat back can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

Front Seats

ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The heated seat symbol is on the bottom left or right side of the touchscreen.

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.




Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: *The heated seats may turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*


Rear Seats

REAR SEAT PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

MANUAL SEATS

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

 **WARNING:** Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.


Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

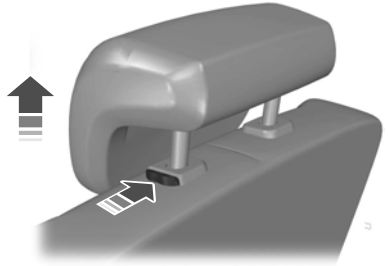
Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Fold the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.

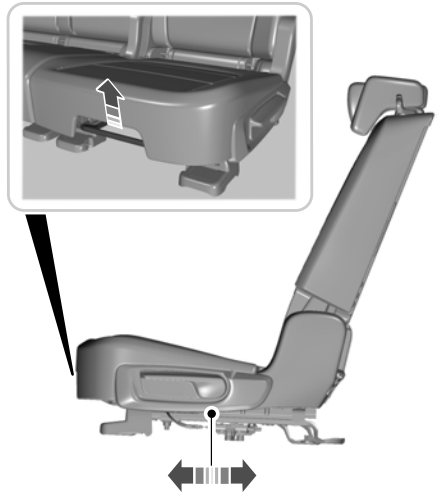


E265267

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

 **WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.



Rear Seats

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

WARNING: Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.



With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seat backrest forward. You may need to lower the center head restraint first.

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest until it latches in the upright position.

HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

Rear Seats

The rear seat heat control switch is on the front lower part of the seat.



Press the heated seat symbol to turn the heated seats on and off.

The heated seats turn off when you switch off the vehicle.

Rear Occupant Alert System

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Rear Occupant Alert System

Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Select **Alert & Horn** or **Alert Only** or **Off**.

Note: The default setting is **Alert Only**.

Note: If you choose **Alert Only**, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

Note: Performing a vehicle system reset causes the system to switch on again.

Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Rear Occupant Alert**.
4. Switch **Child Seat Installed** on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a latch system baby seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message

Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.

Rear Occupant Alert System

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

Memory Function

WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The memory function recalls the position of these features:

- Driver seat.
- Power mirrors.
- Optional power steering column.
- Optional power adjustable pedals.

MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



WARNING: Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS



The memory function buttons are on the driver door.

SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your preferred position.
3. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

Press and release the preset button.

Note: You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when you place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) if the ignition is on and the vehicle is not moving.

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your remote control if you linked it to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked remote control is present.

Using a linked remote control to recall your memory position when the ignition is off moves the seat to the easy entry position.

Note: Pressing any active memory feature adjustment control, or any preset buttons during a memory recall cancels the operation.

Linking a Preset Position to your Remote Control or Passive Key

Your vehicle can save the preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or passive keys.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory features to the position you prefer.

Memory Function

2. Press and hold a preset button for five seconds. A tone sounds after two seconds. Continue holding until you hear a second tone.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in Step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

Note: *If more than one linked remote control or intelligent access key is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.*

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

Note: *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

Note: *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*


Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Behind the first row seats.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT

 **WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.



Press the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track. Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

USB Ports

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

- On the passenger side floor panel.
- 3rd row on the quarter trim panels.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.
- Using devices for extended periods may require starting and running the engine to recharge the battery.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the front of the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console.



E265426

Wireless Accessory Charger

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

Storage

CUP HOLDERS

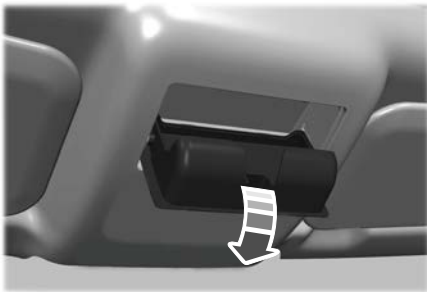
CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

GLASSES HOLDER


LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER





The glasses holder is in the overhead console. Press near the rear edge of the door to open.


Starting and Stopping the Engine


STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

 **WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: *Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.*

Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. An indicator light on the button illuminates when then ignition is on and when the engine starts.

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

READY When you start your vehicle, a green indicator appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not decrease, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The

steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop is a feature that switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

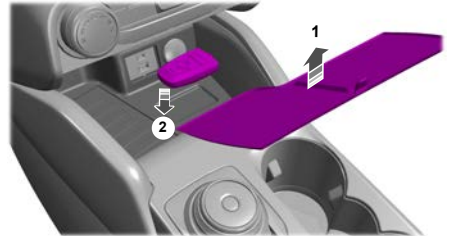
OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION



1. Remove the rubber mat.
2. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

Starting and Stopping the Engine



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - GASOLINE

Why is the engine speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5.0 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 153).

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Why does the engine not crank?

- When you start your vehicle, a green indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Why is the engine speed high when the engine first starts?

- When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Why can I not start my vehicle when the high voltage battery is charged?

- Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. However 12-volt battery depletion can still occur, and in such case you are unable to start your vehicle. See **12V Battery** (page 366).

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start your vehicle, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start your vehicle. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 153).

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WHAT IS A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A hybrid vehicle has an electric motor and a high voltage battery combined with a gasoline engine.

HOW DOES A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

The hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide optimal performance and improved efficiency.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

The gasoline engine starts and stops to provide power when required and to save fuel when not needed. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the gasoline engine to start or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Driving uphill.
- The high voltage battery charge level is low.
- Heating or cooling the vehicle interior in high or low outside temperatures.
- The gasoline engine is below normal operating temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Certain selectable drive modes could cause the engine to run. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 271).

Your hybrid vehicle also comes with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

You could also notice that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off during extended downhill driving. The engine stays on during this engine braking but is not using any fuel.

You could also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

Note: *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INDICATORS

READY When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running.

The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both.

Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV) / Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – TROUBLESHOOTING

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Stop safely now	Displays when a malfunction occurs in the high voltage electric system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if the vehicle runs out of fuel and the high voltage battery is out of charge?

- Refuel and start your vehicle normally. The engine will recharge the high voltage battery.

Why does the engine sometimes start at key-on?

- The vehicle's computer determines if an engine start is required at key-on. It starts the engine when necessary for cabin heating, windshield defrost, if the high voltage battery is low, or if the outside temperature is low.

Can I put E15 or E85 in my vehicle, and how will it affect my fuel economy?

- Your hybrid vehicle can use E15 (15% ethanol, 85% gasoline) fuel, but you may notice slightly reduced fuel economy because ethanol contains less energy per gallon than gasoline. Your hybrid vehicle is not designed to use E85 (85% ethanol).

Why does it take a long time before the engine shuts down?

- There are several reasons the engine stays on for an extended amount of time when you first start it. One common reason is to make sure that the emissions components are warm enough to minimize tailpipe emission. As the climate gets cooler, the engine-on time is extended.

Why does my engine stay on when it is extremely cold outside?

- In order to make sure that the climate control system can begin heating the cabin or defrosting the windshield as soon as a driver requests it, the engine coolant temperature has to be kept sufficiently hot. Keeping the engine on is required to maintain the correct coolant temperature.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION

WHAT IS A PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A plug-in hybrid electric vehicle combines a gasoline engine with an electric motor and rechargeable high voltage battery allowing you to use only electricity to power your vehicle.

HOW DOES A PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

Charging your vehicle adds electrical energy that propels the vehicle. Regularly plug in your vehicle to get optimal electric-only range capability from the high voltage battery. The system maximizes the use of electric-only operation in normal drive mode whenever possible. System conditions could require the engine to operate when necessary.

When the electric-only range reaches zero, the powertrain system switches to hybrid operation. This means that you have depleted the energy you gained from plugging in and charging your vehicle. Both the gasoline engine and electric motor power your vehicle and maximize fuel economy during hybrid operation. You receive some electric-only driving with hybrid operation as the powertrain system maintains the high voltage battery charge within functional limits.

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

The gasoline engine starts and stops to provide power when required and to save fuel when not needed. Restarting your vehicle is not required. Simply step on the accelerator when you are ready to drive. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the gasoline engine to start or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Driving uphill.
- The high voltage battery charge level is low.
- Heating or cooling the vehicle interior in high or low outside temperatures.
- The gasoline engine is below normal operating temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Certain drive modes could cause the engine to run. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 270).

Note: *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

Your plug-in hybrid electric vehicle has several EV drive modes to enhance your driving experience. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 271).

Your hybrid vehicle also comes with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

You could also notice that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off during extended downhill driving. The engine stays on during this engine braking but is not using any fuel.

You could also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INDICATORS

READY When you start your vehicle, a green ready indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running.

The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both.

Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

WHAT IS LOW ENGINE USE MODE

Low engine use mode maintains proper engine lubrication at sufficient temperature and activates when you drive your vehicle with limited engine operation.

HOW DOES LOW ENGINE USE MODE WORK

When in low engine use mode, your vehicle runs the engine as necessary. When low engine use mode begins, a message appears in the information display. If low engine use mode does not complete before you switch your vehicle off, it continues the next time you start your vehicle and the message reappears.

Note: *EV Now mode is not available when in low engine use mode.*

Note: *Cold temperatures affect the engine warm up time and the low engine use mode may operate more frequently.*

Note: *An oil change is not required but gives you the option of not running a low engine use cycle. Resetting the oil life monitoring system suspends the low engine use mode.*

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – TROUBLESHOOTING

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Vehicle plugged in?	Your vehicle needs confirmation that you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Unplug prior to starting vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Engine enabled due to defrost setting	Your vehicle enables the engine due to the climate control defrost setting. This is normal operation.
Change EV mode for full defrost heat	Select either EV Later or EV Auto to enable full defrost. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine enabled for system performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Press OK to enable engine	You can press OK to enable the engine temporarily for increased performance when in EV Now mode.
In neutral depletes HV battery. Shift out of neutral for full vehicle function.	Displays when the vehicle is in neutral (N) gear position with the engine running and you also select low (L) position on the shifter to enter temporary neutral mode. See Temporary Neutral Mode (page 210). Prolonged idling in neutral (N) results in engine idle instability and battery depletion. Shift out of neutral (N) to maintain full vehicle function.
Stop safely now	Displays when a malfunction occurs in the high voltage electric system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV) / Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

POWER FLOW

WHAT IS POWER FLOW

The power flow shows how power is being used in the vehicle and also displays reasons for engine operation.

HOW DOES POWER FLOW WORK - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)



The power flow information for your hybrid vehicle is available through the home screen or under Apps.

Vehicle Operational States

Power flows to or from the front and rear wheels depending on operational state and driving conditions.

- **Idling:** The vehicle is running and in park (P). The engine and/or the high voltage battery are on.
- **Electric driving:** The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The high voltage battery provides power to the wheels.
- **Hybrid driving:** The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The engine and the high voltage battery provide power to the wheels.
- **Regenerative braking:** The vehicle is running in drive (D) and is slowing down. Power captured by the regenerative braking system is sent back to the high voltage battery.

Engine On Due To

The following conditions help explain why the engine is on, and what you can do to allow all electric operation.

- **Drive power:** The engine is on due to accelerator pedal pressure or speed control activation. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or switch off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
- **High speed:** The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for full electric operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric operation.
- **Heater setting:** The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or turn off the heater setting to return to electric operation.
- **Neutral gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in neutral (N). Shift out of neutral (N) to return to electric operation.
- **Engine cold:** The engine is on because it is cold. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the engine is sufficiently warm.
- **Battery charging:** The engine is on to charge the high voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the battery is charged.
- **Low gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in low (L). Shift out of low (L) to return to electric operation.
- **Normal operation:** The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- **Engine braking active:** The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking. This can occur when you turn on the grade assist feature, when speed control is on or when driving with your foot off the accelerator pedal. Turning off grade assist or speed control may allow the vehicle to return to electric operation.

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

- Battery temperature: The engine is on due to high or low high voltage battery temperature. This is a normal operating condition. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- Drive mode: The engine is on due to the drive mode selection. Select an appropriate drive mode for electric only operation.

HOW DOES POWER FLOW WORK - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



The power flow information for your plug-in hybrid vehicle is available through the Home screen or under Apps.

Vehicle Operational States

Power flows to or from the front and rear wheels depending on operational state and driving conditions.

- Idling: The vehicle is running and in park (P). The engine and, or the high voltage battery are on.
- Electric driving: The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The high voltage battery provides power to the wheels.
- Hybrid driving: The vehicle is running and in drive (D) or neutral (N). The engine and the high voltage battery provide power to the wheels.
- Regenerative braking: The vehicle is running in drive (D) and is slowing down. The regenerative braking system captures power and sends it back to the high voltage battery.
- Charging: The vehicle is plugged in and the high voltage battery is being charged.

Engine On Due To

The following conditions help explain why the engine is on and what you can do to allow all electric operation.

- Drive power: The engine is on due to accelerator pedal pressure or speed control activation. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or switch off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
- High speed: The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for full electric operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric operation.
- Heater setting: The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or switch off the heater setting to return to electric operation.
- Neutral gear: The engine is on because the vehicle is in neutral (N). Shift out of neutral gear to return to electric operation.
- Engine cold: The engine is on because it is cold. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the engine is sufficiently warm.
- Battery charging: The engine is on to charge the high voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the battery is sufficiently charged.
- Low gear: The engine is on because the vehicle is in low (L). Shift out of low (L) to return to electric operation.
- Normal operation: The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- Low use: The engine is on to maintain engine oil quality. The vehicle returns to electric operation when low engine use mode is complete. See **How Does Low Engine Use Mode Work** (page 160).

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

- Engine braking active: The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking. This can occur when you turn on the grade assist feature, when speed control is on or when driving with your foot off the accelerator pedal. Turning off grade assist or speed control may allow the vehicle to return to electric operation.
- Battery temperature: The engine is on due to high or low high voltage battery temperature. This is a normal operating condition. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- Drive mode: The engine is on due to the drive mode selection. Select an appropriate drive mode for electric only operation.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto Start/Stop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto Start/Stop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

Note: *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

Note: *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Note: *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

Note: *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto Start/Stop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto Start/Stop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Shift to P, then restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.

- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - GASOLINE



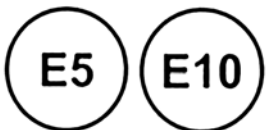
WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Fuel and Refueling



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)

Do not modify the fuel system configuration or the components in the system. Do not replace the fuel system or the components with parts not specially designed to be used with E85.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification, or regular unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 85% ethanol (E85).



Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: We recommend that you use only high quality fuel. Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.

Note: When using E85, your vehicle may have higher fuel consumption.

SWITCHING BETWEEN E85 AND GASOLINE

We do not recommend repeatedly alternating between E85 and gasoline. If you switch from using E85 to gasoline, or from gasoline to E85, add as much fuel as possible, at least half a tank.

Drive your vehicle immediately for a minimum of 8 km (5 mi) to allow it to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration. If you do not follow this procedure, you may experience a minor degradation in engine starting performance and slight fluctuations in engine speed at idle.

If you use E85 exclusively, we recommend that you fill the fuel tank with minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification at each scheduled oil change.


LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is under the luggage compartment floor covering.

Fuel and Refueling

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL


FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER


 **WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.


Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

 **WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

 **WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 172).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Fuel and Refueling

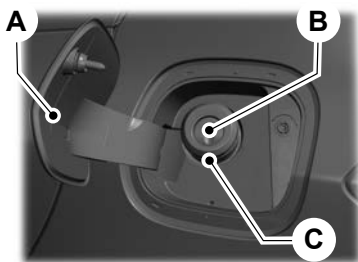
Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.

Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Fuel and Refueling

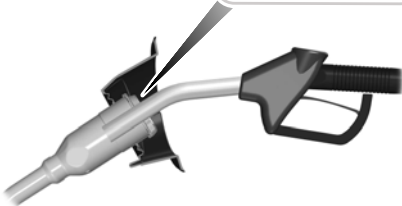
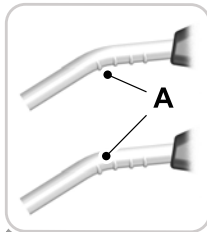
WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

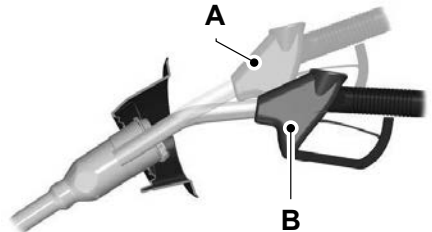
WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

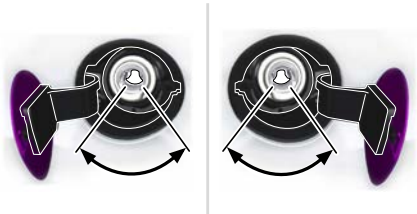
1. Open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



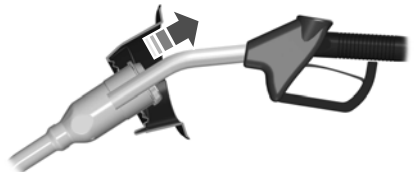
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

Fuel and Refueling

7. Close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

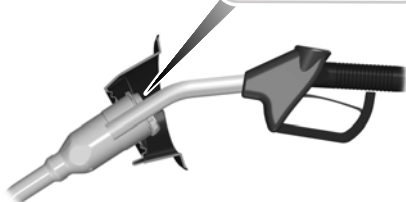
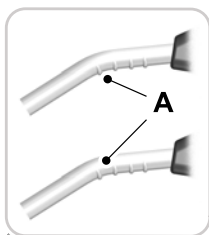
WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

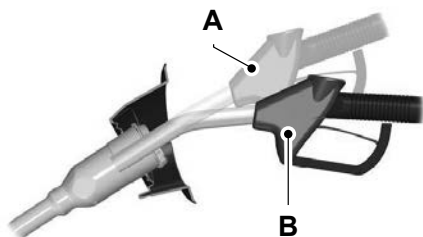


2. Press the button on the instrument panel next to the headlamp switch to open the fuel filler door. The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.

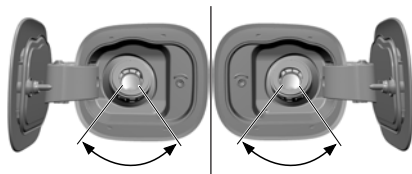
Fuel and Refueling



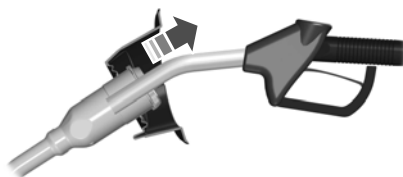
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Close the fuel filler door.

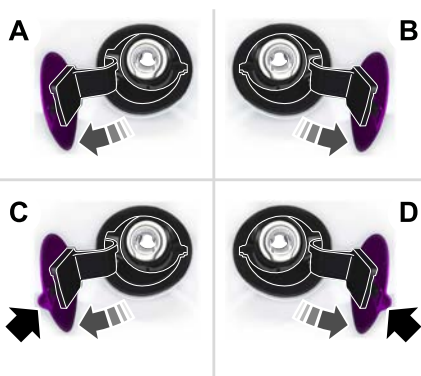
Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the left side of the instrument panel again. Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the left side instrument panel.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.

Fuel and Refueling

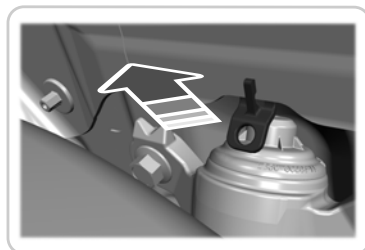


- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

Note: The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).

When using the manual override lever do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.



Note: The manual override lever is on the left side rear wheel well area.

2. Pull the manual override lever.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes.

Note: Only follow this procedure if the fuel filler door fails to open. If the problem remains, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
AWD.	54 L (11.9 gal)
FWD.	51 L (11.2 gal)

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV), PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
FHEV - AWD.	54 L (11.9 gal)
FHEV - FWD.	51 L (11.2 gal)
PHEV.	42 L (9.2 gal)

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test

procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
10.6–9.2 (27–31)	7.5–5.9 (38–48)	6.4–5.3 (44–53)	8.1–6.4 (35–44)	7.8–6.3 (36–45)	144–178

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

WLTP

Combined	CO₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
6.4–5.2 (44–54)	146–119

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
9.4–8 (30–35)	4.8–3.3 (59–86)	5.5–4.5 (51–63)	7.1–6.1 (40–46)	6.4–5.3 (44–53)	121–146

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check fuel fill inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check fuel fill inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Please wait for fuel door to open	Appears while the fuel system is depressurizing with the fuel filler door closed. Wait for the fuel system to depressurize and for the fuel filler door to unlatch.
Fuel door open	Appears when the fuel system has depressurized and opened the fuel filler door. Open the fuel filler door to refuel and close the fuel filler door when refueling is complete.
Fuel door open Close fully to avoid Check engine light	Your vehicle is equipped with a sealed fuel system that requires the fuel filler door to be closed after refueling. This warning message appears when the fuel filler door is ajar. Close the fuel filler door to avoid the Check Engine light. If you see this message and the Check Engine light illuminates, close the fuel filler door. The Check Engine light should clear within five seconds. If the Check Engine light persists, see your dealer.
Refuel error See manual	Appears when the fuel system fails to depressurize, or the fuel filler door fails to open. You have to use the fuel filler door manual override lever when opening the fuel door.

Catalytic Converter

WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 332).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 171).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Gasoline Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER

The gasoline particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful particulates from the exhaust emissions.

HOW DOES THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

Particles in the exhaust emissions collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles captured by the filter into harmless gases.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp could illuminate or a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust emissions temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction indicator lamp.

Gasoline Particulate Filter

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.• Avoid prolonged engine idling.• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Drive at a moderate speed.• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

High Voltage Battery - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power your vehicle.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.


Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.


Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)


WHAT IS AC CHARGING


AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the battery for longer battery life.


CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.


 **WARNING:** This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.

 **WARNING:** The AC wall plug must fit firmly into the AC outlet. If the connection feels loose, worn or the AC outlet is damaged, please have a qualified electrician replace the AC outlet. Using a dual-voltage charging cord with a worn outlet may cause burns, property damage and increase the risk of electric shock or fire.


 **WARNING:** Do not use the 240 V convenience cord with an extension cord, two-prong adapter, surge protector, timer or other adapter. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock or fire.


 **WARNING:** Do not allow charging equipment to be immersed in water or liquids. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, electric shock, or serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to open the charging equipment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment if it is faulty or has been damaged. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

 **WARNING:** Install charging equipment in compliance with local regulations. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, electric shock, serious personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. The wall outlet must be in good condition and meet up-to-date local codes. Have a qualified electrician check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock, personal injury, or death.


 **WARNING:** Do not modify the dual-voltage charging cord plug. If the dual-voltage charging cord plug does not properly fit into the wall outlet, have a qualified electrician install the correct wall outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, or death.


CHARGING EQUIPMENT


 **WARNING:** Read all instructions in this publication before using the charging equipment.


Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)


 **WARNING:** Children should be supervised when in the vicinity of the charging equipment while plugged in.


 **WARNING:** Do not put fingers into the electric charge coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock.


 **WARNING:** This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.


 **WARNING:** Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Failure to follow this instruction can cause damage to the charging equipment.


 **WARNING:** Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged.

 **WARNING:** Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. The wall outlet must be in good condition and meet up-to-date local codes. Have a qualified electrician check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock, personal injury, or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F).

 **WARNING:** Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F).

 **WARNING:** The AC wall plug must fit firmly into the AC outlet. If the connection feels loose, worn or the AC outlet is damaged, please have a qualified electrician replace the AC outlet. Using a dual-voltage charging cord with a worn outlet may cause burns, property damage and increase the risk of electric shock or fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment with an extension cord, surge protector, timer or other adapter. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock or fire.

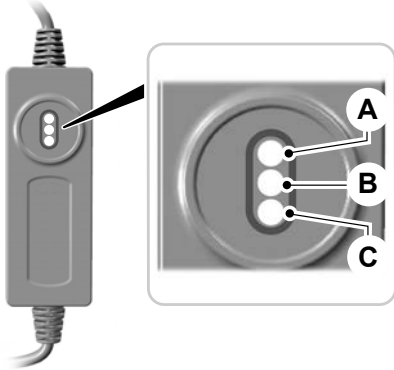
Your vehicle has a universal home charge cord in the luggage compartment.

- Do not use this product if the flexible power cord or electric vehicle cable has broken insulation, or any other signs of damage.
- Do not use this product if the enclosure or the electric vehicle connector is broken, cracked, open, or shows any other indication of damage.

Note: *You need to plug the universal home charge cord into a dedicated outlet.*

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Universal Home Charge Cord



- A. Power.
- B. Fault.
- C. Check Outlet.

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE - Use a three-prong AC outlet that is properly grounded, 15-20 amps or greater, and in good condition. Use a dedicated circuit. You cannot have other appliances connected to the same circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

Note: Make sure the electrical source meets the requirements for the high-voltage batteries to charge.

Make sure that the universal home charge cord is completely unwrapped before charging. Always plug the cord into the AC outlet before connecting the charged coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

Note: When you plug the universal home charge cord into an outlet, use the following table to determine your vehicle charge status. If the power indicator light is off after plugging in the universal home charge cord, use a different outlet.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Universal Home Charge Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
Off	Off	Off	If the LED indicators are off after plugging in the universal home charge cord and the plug is experiencing a no power condition from the wall outlet, use a different outlet.	Use a different wall outlet.
On	Off	Off	The universal home charge cord is plugged into the wall outlet and ready to charge your vehicle. Reference the charge port section below for information on vehicle charging.	No action required.
On	Flashing	On	The universal home charge cord AC plug is experiencing an overheating condition. The universal home charge cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. If the fault persists, you have a bad wall outlet.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.
On	Off	Flashing	The universal home charge cord is charging at a reduced current rate due to a wall outlet over temperature condition.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.
On	On	Flashing	The universal home charge cord AC plug has overheated. The cordset retry mode has been exhausted. Your vehicle is not charging. You have a bad wall outlet.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.
On	Flashing	Off	The universal home charge cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. The universal home charge cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. Your vehicle is not charging.	Unplug and re-plug to vehicle charge port.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Universal Home Charge Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
On	On	Off	The universal home charge cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. The cordset retry mode has been exhausted. Your vehicle is not charging. Call for service.	Request vehicle service.
On	On/Two flash interval	Two flash interval	Missing ground at AC outlet. Your vehicle is not charging. The universal home charge cord is in retry mode.	Connect to a properly grounded AC outlet. If fault still exists for more than two minutes, return cordset for service.
On	On/Flashing	Off	The universal home charge cord is experiencing an internal fault. Call for service.	Wait two minutes. If fault is still present, request cordset service. Replace the cordset.

Note: If charging for your plug-in vehicle fails, please call the Customer Relationship Center, or click on Call for support or Live chat at our website.

MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Note: Do not hold the universal home charge cord by the flexible power cable.

Make sure that you completely wrap the universal home charge cord after charging.

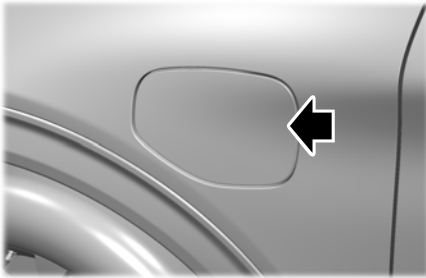
When complete, replace the universal home charge cord in the luggage compartment.

Note: Store the universal home charge cord in a clean, dry place between the temperature of -40–90°C (-39.9–193.9°F).

LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is between the front left-hand side door and the front left-hand wheel well. To open, press the center right edge of the charge port door, and then release.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



Note: Do not force the charge port door open or closed. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

The charge status indicator around the charge port indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

We use the color white as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in, unplugging or pressing the charge times button.

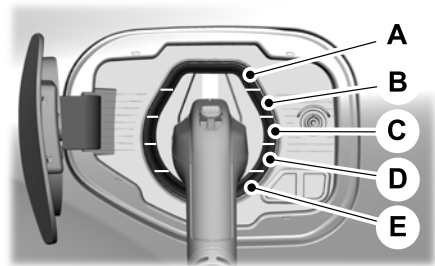
We use the color blue when you plug the vehicle in and are either charging or waiting to charge.

We use the color orange to indicate charge faults.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the charge is:

- When the bottom zone is pulsing, the charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When the bottom zone illuminates and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 20-40 percent.

- When two zones illuminate and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 40-60 percent.
- When three zones illuminate and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When four zones illuminate and the top zone is pulsing, the charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the charge is 100 percent.



- A. 80%-100% state of charge.
- B. 60%-80% state of charge.
- C. 40%-60% state of charge.
- D. 20%-40% state of charge.
- E. 0%-20% state of charge.

Note: When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly lit up in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then the bottom three zones light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to preferred charge settings or charge station actions.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Note: If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is on. If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, then you can switch it off. See charge port light settings under access menu in features on your touchscreen.

AC CHARGING

CONNECTING THE CHARGER

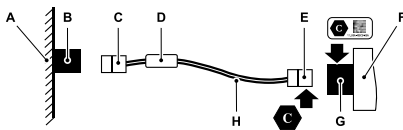


WARNING: Do not use the charging equipment if it is faulty or has been damaged. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

Charging at Home

You must unwrap your universal home charge cord completely before charging.

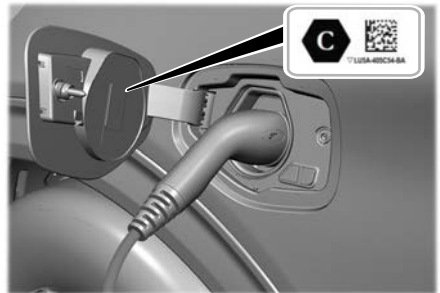
When using the universal home charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A Mains
- B Socket Outlet (Household)
- C Plug
- D Control box
- E Charge coupler
- F Vehicle

- G Charge port receptacle
- H Universal home charge cord

1. Shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Plug the universal home charge cord plug into the AC outlet.
3. Fully open the charge port door.



4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

Note: Make sure that you fully engage the charge coupler.

Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

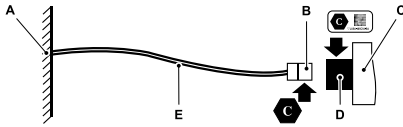
Note: When the charge coupler is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: It takes approximately four to six hours to completely charge a discharged battery.

Charging in Public

When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



- A AC charge station
- B Charge coupler
- C Vehicle
- D Charge port receptacle
- E Cable

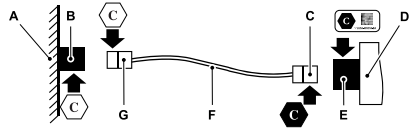
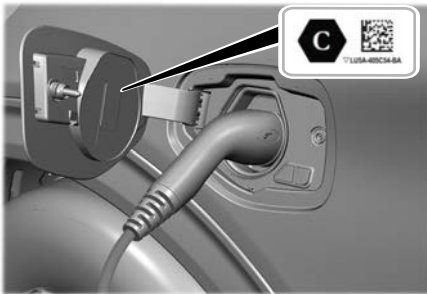
Note: If you are using a 230 V charging station, follow the instructions on the charging station.

Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord (If Equipped)

You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.

When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

1. Shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Select the appropriate charge station port.
3. Fully open the charge port door.



- A AC charge station
- B Charge station port
- C Vehicle charge coupler
- D Vehicle
- E Charge port receptacle
- F Public charge cable
- G Charge station charge coupler

4. Plug the charge station coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

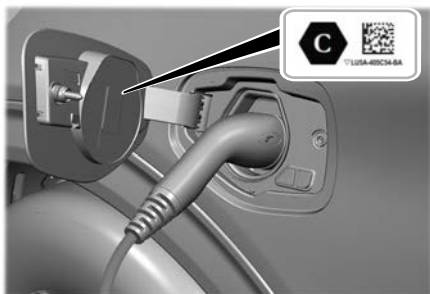
Note: Make sure that you fully engage the charge station coupler.

Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When the charge coupler is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

1. Shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Plug your public charge cord into the appropriate charge station port.
3. Remove the charge port cover.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



4. Plug the public charge cord coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

Note: Make sure that you fully engage the public charge cord coupler.

Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When the coupler is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: If you are using a 230 V charging station, follow the instructions on the charging station.

STOPPING CHARGING

The charge port unlock button is next to the charge port.



Press the charge port unlock button to stop charging the high voltage battery.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance.

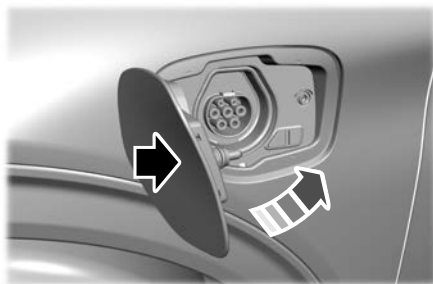
Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

1. Unlock your vehicle.
2. Press the charge port unlock button.
3. Disconnect the coupler from the charge port on your vehicle.

Note: You cannot disconnect the coupler until charging has been stopped or completed.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler.

Note: Do not use excessive force to disconnect the coupler. This could damage the charge port and the coupler.



4. Close the charge port door.
5. Disconnect the universal home charge cord plug from the AC outlet.

Note: Do not disconnect the universal home charge cord plug from the AC outlet when the vehicle is charging. This could damage the AC outlet and the universal home charge cord.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Note: If you are still unable to disconnect the charging coupler after trying the cord unlock buttons at the port and on your vehicle touchscreen, press any available stop button on the charging system to disable the charge to your vehicle, then try again.

USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The vehicle app allows you to do the following:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.
- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.
- Control your Connected Charge Station remotely.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

SETTING THE CHARGING SCHEDULE AND PREFERENCES



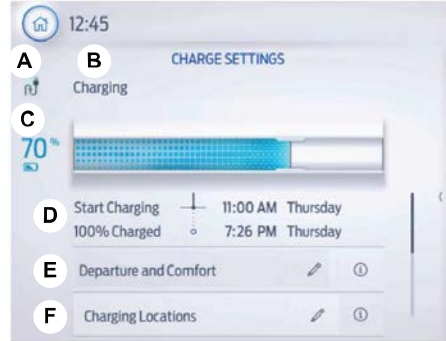
You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a max charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up on the touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

To view your charge settings:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press Charge Settings on the touchscreen.

Charge Settings Screen



- A Charging status icon.
- B Charging status.
- C High voltage battery state of charge.
- D Charging time information.
- E Departure and comfort settings.
- F Charging location settings.

Charging Status Icons

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.



Not charging due to a fault.



Not currently charging.



Charging.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

Charging Status

Shows the present state of the charging system.

Charge Status	Action
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed based on your charge time settings.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Charge Status	Action
Charging station fault	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charging station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charging station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charge station.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Charging Time Information

When charging, the start and estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the start and end times display based on known charging infrastructure.

Note: *Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times. See **Charging Your Vehicle** (page 189).*

Departure and Comfort

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are.

By setting a departure time, your vehicle can use your charging time preferences to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Note: *By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy is needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.*

Note: *You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.*

Departure and Comfort Setup

Follow these steps to set departure and comfort level preferences.



The edit button for departure and comfort setup is on the charge settings screen.

1. Press the edit button for departure and comfort.
2. Select a time.

Note: *Two time settings show for each day of the week on the departure times schedule screen.*

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

3. On the departure times settings screen, set your desired time, cabin comfort level and days of the week to repeat.
4. Press save.

Note: *Your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen.*

5. Press back to return to the main charge settings screen.

Note: *The next departure time and cabin temperature display.*

Note: *Cabin conditioning comfort level may vary depending on whether you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power could be used in addition to the charging power to heat the cabin.*

Charging Locations

Your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends.

This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: *Your vehicle charges during your preferred time windows. Charging outside these windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge limit set for this location by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in.*

Note: *You can also access this feature using the FordPass app.*

Charging Location Setup

Follow these steps to set time and charge level preferences for a charging location.



The edit button for charging locations is on the charge settings screen.

1. Press the edit button for charging locations.
2. On the charging locations screen select add new location.

Note: *You can also edit settings for previously saved locations listed on this screen.*

3. Select an address from the list of recent charge locations.
4. Confirm that this is the location you want to save with the help of the map view.

Note: *Depending on the GPS location, the address on the navigation may not precisely match up with your charging location. Confirm on the map that the pin is in the expected location.*

5. Edit the location name if desired and set a maximum charge limit.

Note: *The name of locations cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.*

Note: *Charging stops when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge limit setting.*

6. Press continue to schedule.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



7. Set preferred charging times for weekday and/or weekend by pressing and dragging along the 24 hour time wheel.

Note: You can set up to two blocks of time (charge windows).

Note: Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.

8. Press continue once you have your desired time settings for weekday and weekend.
9. The summary screen displays your settings for this location. Press save or press back to change your settings.

Note: Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings screen displays the location name. The charging times are based on your preferred time settings for that location plus the next departure time.

Note: Reaching your max charge limit by your next departure time is always the priority. When charging time preferences are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging immediately after plugging in. Charging pauses when the rest of the charge can be done within the preferred charging windows.

Additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen once charging locations and departure and comfort have been set up.



- A Charging location name.
- B Next departure time and cabin temperature.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)



- A On/Off switch for departure and comfort.
- B On/Off switch for charging locations.

Charging Location Name

Displays when your vehicle is at a saved charging location.

Next Departure Time and Cabin Comfort Level

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

On/Off Switch for Departure and Comfort

This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times off and on. Switching off departure and comfort does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

On/Off Switch for Charging Locations

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved charging location. Use this switch to turn your settings off and on for this location only. Switching off for this location does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

Note: *If the charging locations switch is off, the vehicle begins charging to 100% once plugged in.*

CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS



Identifier symbol visible on universal home charge cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Universal home charge cord coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Charge station port, public charge cord coupler.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Vehicle plugged in?	Your vehicle needs confirmation that you unplugged it before allowing a start. Make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message before starting your vehicle.
Unplug prior to starting vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Charge Station Fault See Manual	A charging fault has been detected. Check the charging cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	The charging station cannot communicate with your vehicle. Contact the station provider.

Charging Your Vehicle - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does my vehicle have a hum or fan noise when charging?

- A hum or a fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. This is a normal operation as your vehicle is keeping the battery cool while charging.

Manual Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

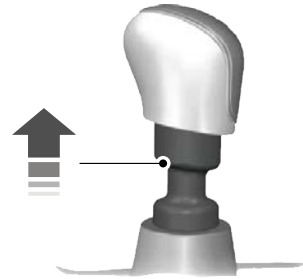
Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.



CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 215).

CLUTCH FLUID SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Manual Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 219).

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P). See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 211).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12 V battery has run out of charge.

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

LOW (L) - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

In low (L) your vehicle decelerates more noticeably than in drive (D) when the accelerator pedal is released.

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 324).

LOW (L) - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

In low (L) your vehicle holds low gears.

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 324).

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR

The selector is on the center console.



E224178

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.

2. Rotate the outer ring to select a position.

Note: The position illuminates on the selector.

Note: Your vehicle cannot shift from drive (D) to park (P) with a clockwise rotation. Your vehicle cannot shift from park (P) to drive (D) with a counterclockwise rotation.

3. Press the low (L) or manual (M) or sport (S) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

P R N D L

Note: The position could illuminate on the selector.

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Automatic Transmission

Note: Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 218).

Note: If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Press the manual (M) or low (L) button.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

Note: You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

HOW DOES TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE WORK

Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off. For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

Note: You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with power on.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Note: Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 211).

Automatic Transmission

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE LIMITATIONS

This mode could be unavailable if your 12 V battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

ENTERING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: An instructional message appears.

5. Press the low (L) button.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Note: The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.

EXITING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unfastened.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

Note: Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving** (page 152).

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

Automatic Transmission

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears, with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

GRADE ASSIST - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

HOW DOES GRADE ASSIST WORK

This feature helps maintain vehicle speed when driving down a slope. The system uses a combination of engine motoring and regenerative braking to maintain vehicle speed.

Note: *You could hear engine speed increasing and decreasing. This is normal operation.*

The system activates when all the following occur:

- Your vehicle is on a downhill slope.
- The selector is in drive (D).
- You release the accelerator pedal.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Transmission not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message is typically after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
Shift malfunction Confirm park brake Apply before exiting the vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be pressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Automatic Transmission

Message	Description
To stay in Neutral when exiting vehicle select L button	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
To stay in Neutral when exiting vehicle select L button	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
30min Neutral Mode enabled Not a tow mode	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral Mode.

All-Wheel Drive

HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

Your all-wheel drive vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than those, could subject the vehicle to excess stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Using different size tires other than the provided spare could cause system damage or disable the all-wheel drive system.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
AWD temporarily disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD off	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD malfunction Service required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM INDICATORS

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



If the warning lamp illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The warning lamp also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID





WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Brakes

 **WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

 **WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.




2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 400).

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS

 **WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is brake dust on the wheels normal?

Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 374).

Will wet driving conditions effect my braking abilities?

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Is brake noise considered normal?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.

When should you replace the brake fluid?

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Change the brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent degraded braking performance.

Electric Parking Brake

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into first gear, switch the ignition off and remove the keys or remote control before you leave your vehicle.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



WARNING: Apply the parking brake and make sure your vehicle is in park (P). Power the vehicle off and remove the keys or remote control whenever you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The electric parking brake switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when you shift into park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 208).

Electric Parking Brake

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Note: *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

Pulling Away When Towing a Trailer Uphill

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

Note: *The electric parking brake also automatically releases if you shift into a gear and release the clutch pedal without pressing the accelerator pedal.*

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 332).

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 334).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires

service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake.

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.

Electric Parking Brake

Message	Details
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the brakes. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake released	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake applied	The electric parking brake is applied.

Reverse Brake Assist

WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R). Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h (1–7 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Reverse Brake Assist

Note: The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Switch **Reverse Brake Assist** on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

Note: If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

Note: The default setting is on in some regions.

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays when the system applies the brakes and remains on for a few seconds.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. Make sure the parking aids and cross traffic alert systems are on. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist malfunction	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure the reverse brake assist is on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 223).
- Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- If your vehicle has the cross traffic alert system, make sure it is on. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 296).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **Parking Aids** (page 235).
- Make sure the traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 229).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- An anti-lock brake, traction control or stability control event may have occurred. Reverse brake assist resumes operation when the event is complete.
- Make sure the rear view camera and 360 degree camera are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the camera. If the message still appears after cleaning the camera, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, have the system checked.

- Make sure the cross traffic alert, rear parking aid and side parking aid sensors are not blocked or faulty. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 296). See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 236). See **Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors** (page 238).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- Reverse brake assist does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: *If the answers to why the system is unavailable do not assist in returning reverse brake assist to available, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Hill Start Assist** on or off.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill start assist not available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Close the driver door and fasten your seatbelt before you switch the system on.



Press the button on the center console.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: Make sure you switch the system off before using an automatic car wash.

USING AUTO HOLD - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

Note: Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 219).

Note: The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) while pressing the brake pedal.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

Auto Hold

USING AUTO HOLD - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 219).*

Note: *The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) and press the brake pedal.*

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Traction Control

TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

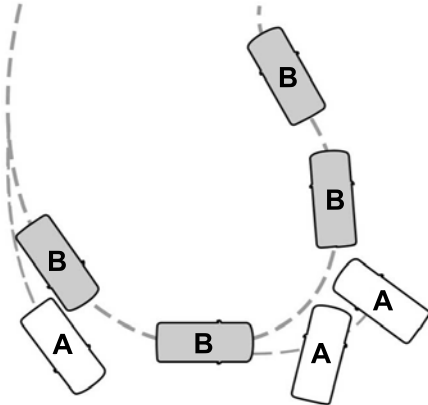
AdvanceTrac™ and Traction Control

Message	Action
ESC Service required	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
ESC off	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it off.
ESC on	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it on.
ESC Sport mode	The status of the AdvanceTrac sport mode after you switched it on.
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Stability Control

WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



- A Without stability control.
- B With stability control.

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the

electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Steering

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches to reduced steering assist or manual steering. Additionally, whenever disconnecting the battery or installing a new one, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

Note: *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING ADAPTIVE STEERING

Adaptive Learning (If Equipped)

Adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and crash avoidance systems.

Note: *When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.*

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds could also make the steering wander or pull.*

Steering

STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

STEERING – WARNING LAMPS



The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

Note: *If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.*

STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering

STEERING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does it seem that the steering is wandering or pulling?

- Check your vehicle for an improperly inflated or uneven tire, loose or worn suspension or steering components, or improper vehicle alignment.

The system is functioning properly and the components have been checked, why is the steering system continuing to pull or wander?

- A high crown in the road or crosswinds could make the steering system feel like it is wandering or pulling.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Mute the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button and use the menu to set the system on mute.

The system can also be muted using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

Parking aid visual indication remains on and can not be turned off when the transmission is in reverse (R)

Parking Aids

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 18 km/h (11 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

Note: *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.*

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

SIDE PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. You must drive at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph) to reset the steering wheel angle information.

Note: *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning mutes. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off and audible warning mutes.

LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS



The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

Message	Details
Parking aid malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Pilot	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

Message	Details
Check rear Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to the rear door ajar or damage to the rear of your vehicle.

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA



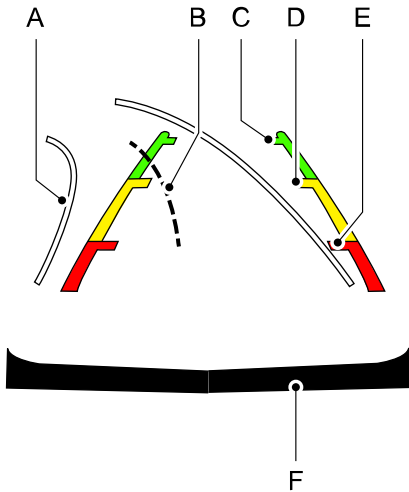
E249202

The rear view camera is on the liftgate.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Rear View Camera



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

Rear View Camera

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



You can switch this feature on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

180 Degree Camera

HOW DOES THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

When you switch the 180 degree view on, the view splits into three images. You can use the right and left outer images when reversing to check for cross traffic and pedestrians.

When you use the 180 degree camera view, objects behind your vehicle are shown extremely stretched and do not appear as actual ratio.

180 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the liftgate or the rear cargo doors are ajar. If the liftgate or the rear cargo doors are ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects.

Note: Guide lines do not appear when you switch the 180 degree view on.

SWITCHING THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

When you shift to reverse (R) and the rear view camera image appears, press the button in the corner of the touch screen to change to 180 degree view and back to normal view.

The 180 degree view turns off when you shift into park (P) or into any forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.

Note: Whenever you shift to reverse (R) the standard rear view camera image with guidelines is the default view.

Automatic Camera View Change (if Equipped)

When you shift to reverse (R) and the system detects an approaching vehicle, it automatically activates the 180 degree camera view.

When the intended path is free of cross traffic, the camera automatically switches back to the view before.



Press the rear normal view button to temporarily switch the automatic camera view change off.

Note: When you shift to reverse (R) again the automatic camera view change is reactivated.

360 Degree Camera

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

Note: Use caution if a door is ajar. The camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the liftgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

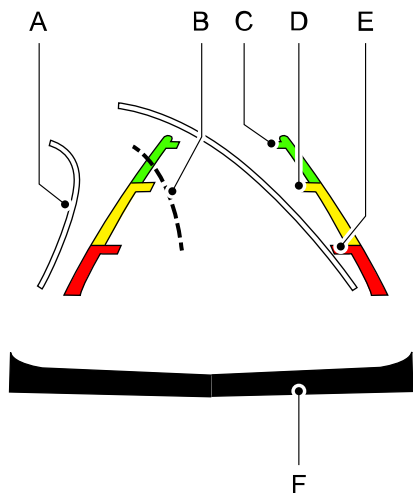
Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

360 Degree Camera



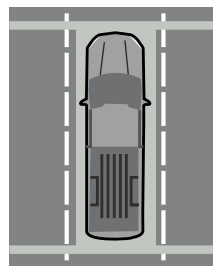
- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

360 Degree Camera

Note: *The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.*

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), the front and 360 degree views display when the button is pressed.

When in reverse (R), the rear and the 360 degree views display.

Note: *The 360 degree camera view turns off when the vehicle speed increases, except when in reverse (R).*

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press to access the different camera views.



Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.



Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.



Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



Zooms in on the 360 degree image.

Active Park Assist

WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: FULLY ACTIVE PARK ASSIST



Press the parking button.



Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.

Active park assist turns on and automatically searches for parking spaces, or if your vehicle is parked it searches for ways to exit.

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel active park assist at any time move the steering wheel or shift out of neutral.

Note: *To pause active park assist release the parking button.*

Brake System Intervention

When active park assist controls the steering, in certain conditions it can apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

Note: *This can cancel active park assist.*

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SEMI ACTIVE PARK ASSIST



Press the parking button .



Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.

The active park assist turns on and automatically searches for parking spaces, or if your vehicle is parked for exiting ways.

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, press the parking button or move the steering wheel.

Note: *Active park assist also cancels when your vehicle exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).*

Active Park Assist

Brake System Intervention

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it could under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

Note: *This could cause the parking assistance to cancel.*

ENTERING A PARKING SPACE


1.  Press the parking button.
2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Slowly drive your vehicle parallel to the other parked vehicles.

Note: *Park assist automatically searches for possible parking spaces displaying them on the touchscreen, and highlights the preferred parking space.*

Note: *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*


4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.

Note: *A circular arrow sign appears over the highlighted parking space if the parking mode can be changed.*

5.  Press to select the parking mode if the icon appears over the selected parking space.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

EXITING A PARKING SPACE

1.  Press the parking button.
2.  Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Use the turn signal to choose the direction to exit the parking space.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Release the parking brake.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: *After active park assist drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.*

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

Active Park Assist

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Active Park malfunction	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does active park assist not operate correctly?

- The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

- You have switched traction control off.
- The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?

- The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
- The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
- There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.

- There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
- The parking space is more than 1.5 m (1.6 yd) or less than 0.5 m (0.5 yd) away from your vehicle.
- Your vehicle's speed is greater than 35 km/h (21.7 mph).
- You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?

- An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
- Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.
- Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
- The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
- A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.
- A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
- The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
- The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

Cruise Control

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The indicator changes color in the information display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

SET-

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

Cruise Control

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch the system on.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

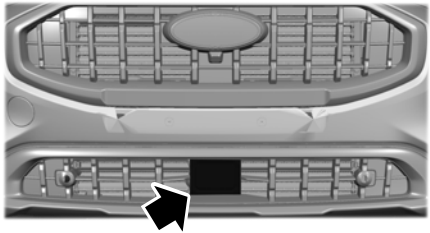
WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

Adaptive Cruise Control

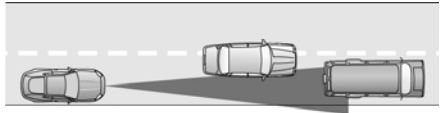
Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function.

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection Issues Can Occur:

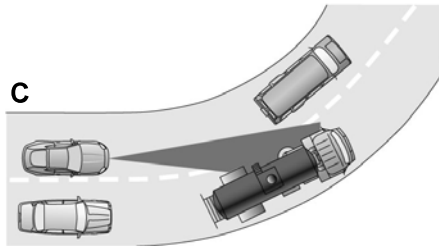
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 251).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

Note: You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: *If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.*

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.*

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET- Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Drive to the required speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h (10 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

SET-

Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

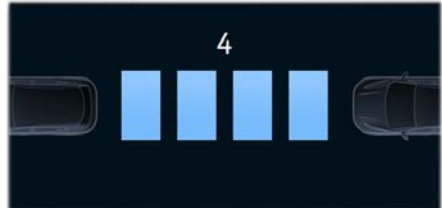
You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

ADP

Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than five seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

RES If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than five seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

Adaptive Cruise Control



E249552

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

RES

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

Adaptive Cruise Control

RESUMING THE SET SPEED

RES

Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal**.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

Note: The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.

Note: If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 253).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 264).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.

- The steering sensor detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.

Note: If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.

Note: If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 254).

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.

Adaptive Cruise Control

- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 263).

Note: *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Switching Lane Centering On



Press the button on the steering wheel.



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Make sure both systems are active.

Switching Lane Centering Off



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternatively:



Press the button on the steering wheel. A message appears on the instrument cluster display prompting you to confirm.

Note: *Lane centering turns off each time you switch your vehicle off.*

Note: *Lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 263).*

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Press **Lane Centering Assist**.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 264).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *The system could detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Adaptive Cruise Control

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, and your hands are on the steering wheel, a tone sounds, and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system quickly activates and releases the brakes, and slows the vehicle down to low speeds while maintaining steering control when lane markings are present. If no lane markings are present, then the vehicle will come to a stop. Hazard lights will be automatically activated by the system.

RES

If your vehicle starts to slow down after system cancellation, you must take full control of the vehicle. To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation, press and release the resume button or press the accelerator pedal.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

Note: *If your vehicle slows down due to your inactivity twice within a key cycle, the system disables. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.*

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Blue status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane centring assist not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST

HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive Speed Assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system identifies curves and highway exits, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 266).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition** (page 305).

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 416). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.



WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



WARNING: The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 253).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 270). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

Note: *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS



WARNING: The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Switch **Predictive Speed Assist** on or off.

Adaptive Cruise Control

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

Speed sign indicator









When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

Road geometry indicator



When the system detects a curve, turn, roundabout, or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

Road geometry indicator symbols

-  Left curve.
-  Right curve.
-  Left intersection.
-  Right intersection.
-  Left roundabout.
-  Right roundabout.

Adaptive Cruise Control

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Speed Sign Recognition Not Available	Navigation system based speed limit information is not available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Message	Details
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility.
Adaptive cruise not available	Displays when the system is not available.
Adaptive cruise malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Norm. cruise act. Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

Drive Mode Control

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL - EXCLUDING: FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Drive mode control delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems optimize steering, handling and powertrain response in the selected mode. The drive mode control provides a single location to control performance settings for multiple systems.

Changing the drive mode changes the functionality of the following:

- Electric power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on the mode you select. See **Electric Power Steering Precautions** (page 232).
- Electronic stability control and traction control assist your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 231).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your driving inputs.
- Engine sounds change based on each mode.
- Transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules tuned to each mode.
- Four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.

The system tailors your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

Note: *Not all settings may be available.*

Note: *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the mode defaults to Normal.*

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The system delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems optimize steering, handling and powertrain response. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

Changing the drive mode changes the functionality of the following systems:

- Electric power-assisted steering system adjusts steering effort and feel based on the mode you select. See **How Does Electric Power Steering Work** (page 232).
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 231).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your driving inputs.
- Transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules tuned to each mode.

Drive Mode Control

- Four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.
- Electric vehicle mode selections may be limited. See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics** (page 157).

The system tailors your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

Note: *Not all settings may be available.*

Note: *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the mode defaults to Normal.*

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



Press the button on the instrument panel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

As a secondary option:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.

DRIVE MODES

ECO



For efficient driving. This mode helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and helps to increase driving range.

NORMAL



For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience.

Note: *If you switch off your vehicle in a mode other than Normal, the system prompts you to return to this previous mode when you next start your vehicle. If you ignore the selection prompt, the system stays in Normal mode.*

SLIPPERY



For less than ideal road conditions such as snow or ice covered roads. This mode lowers throttle response, adjusts transmission shift points, and optimizes vehicle stability controls to help mitigate wheel spin and maintain vehicle control when driving in winter conditions.

Note: *Using slippery mode on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire wear.*

SPORT



For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases accelerator pedal response, enhances steering to provide a sportier feel, and adjusts transmission shift points for quicker vehicle acceleration.

Note: *Auto-start-stop is disabled when you select this mode.*

TRAIL - ACTIVE



Vehicle settings suited for driving on unpaved roads.

Note: *Auto-start-stop is disabled when you select this mode.*

Drive Mode Control

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES

AUTO EV



This mode provides an automatic use of high voltage battery power during the drive, staying in electric mode when possible and running the engine when needed.

EV LATER



In EV Later, your vehicle runs on the engine as needed and saves most of the available electric range for later use in Auto EV or EV Now mode.

For example, your initial drive is at high speeds on open roads, but later your drive is at low speeds in an urban area where electric only driving is most efficient. In this case, you can select EV Later for the higher speed portion of your trip and then select Auto EV or EV Now for the urban portion.

When you enable EV Later, a white EV Later icon appears in the information display. EV Later resets to Auto EV when you switch off your vehicle. You may select EV Later again during your next drive.

When you select EV Later with the vehicle fully charged or near fully charged, some electric-only driving range is used to discharge the battery. This is to allow for full operation of the regenerative braking system.

EV NOW



This mode provides an electric only driving experience.

Do not use EV Now when towing a trailer. The electric drive system is not designed for towing.

Your vehicle could accelerate slower and the top speed could be lower than when in Auto EV mode.

You can enable your engine at any time by using one of the following methods:

- Fully press the accelerator pedal. A pop-up message appears. Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enable the engine. When the engine is no longer needed, your vehicle returns to EV Now. The message disappears if you release the accelerator pedal.
- Select a different EV mode. This exits EV Now mode and permits engine operation. To return to EV Now mode, select it again.

Your vehicle could enter Engine Enabled mode if system conditions require it. A message displays if this occurs. This is a normal function of the system and your vehicle returns to EV Now mode when possible.

When you enable EV Now mode, a blue EV Now icon appears in the information display. If your vehicle is in Engine Enabled mode, the EV Now icon is amber. EV Now exits when your available electric range reaches zero.

Note: *In certain vehicles, cabin air heating is not available in EV Now mode, only heated seats and heated steering wheel.*

Drive Mode Control

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES – TROUBLESHOOTING

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Change EV mode for full defrost heat	Select either EV Later or EV Auto to enable full defrost. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine enabled for system performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Press OK to enable engine	You can press OK to enable the engine temporarily for increased performance when in EV Now mode.

Eco Coach

WHAT IS ECO COACH

Eco coach is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently.

HOW DOES ECO COACH WORK

Eco coach provides feedback through the instrument cluster display about your driving behaviour.

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure.*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

HOW DOES INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL WORK

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display Settings**.
4. Select **Eco Coach**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Select **Eco Behaviour**.

Local Hazard Information

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION INDICATORS



Animals on the road.



Approaching vehicle coming the wrong way.



Broken down vehicle or accident.



Broken down vehicle or accident.



Fire.



General.



Hazardous driving conditions.



Objects on the road.



People on the road.



Road works.



Traffic jam.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all indicators shown are available.

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 415).

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Local Hazard Information**.

Speed Limiter

HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button

SET-

upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

CAN

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

Speed Limiter

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

RES

Press to resume the set speed limiter.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

RES

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, when you press the button or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM

It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 416). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING



Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again with the system in standby mode to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.*

Note: *If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.*

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+ You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: LANE CENTERING

CAN Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

LIM Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

RES Press to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

RES The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, when you press the button or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the center display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Intelligent Speed Limiter** off.

Note: If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM


The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK


The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror.


Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*


LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.


 **WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by US.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

Lane Keeping System

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.

Note: The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Mode**.
5. Select a setting.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the two modes on the touchscreen:

- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.

Note: The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Alert Intensity**.
5. Select a setting.

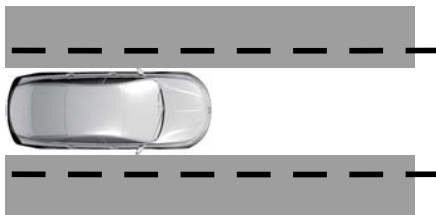
Note: This setting does not affect the aid mode.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

Note: When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

Note: The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

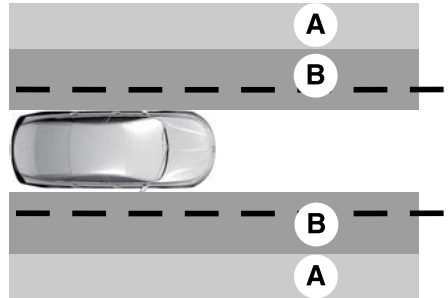
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Aid Mode and alert combines both, aid mode and steering wheel vibration alert.

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.



A Alert.

B Aid.

Note: The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



When you switch the system on and the system detects lane markings, a green indicator and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Keeping System



When the vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph), or the system does not detect lane markings, a gray indicator and gray lane markings appear.



When you switch the system off, a gray indicator with a strikethrough and gray lane markings appear.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Note: *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Lane Keeping System

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS

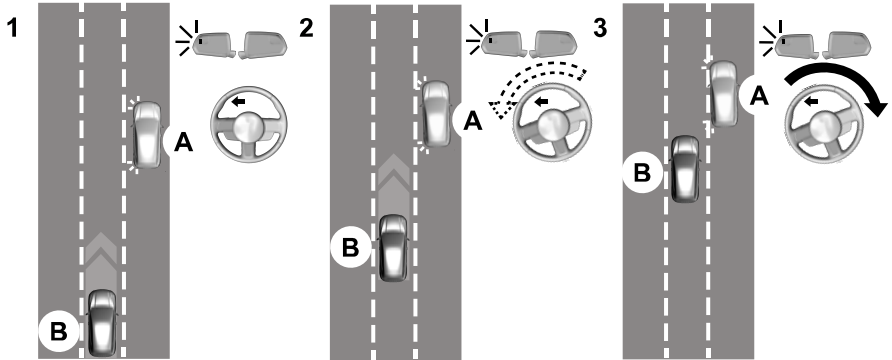


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 290).

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

Note: When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 292).

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 292).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

Lane Keeping System

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 292).

Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS

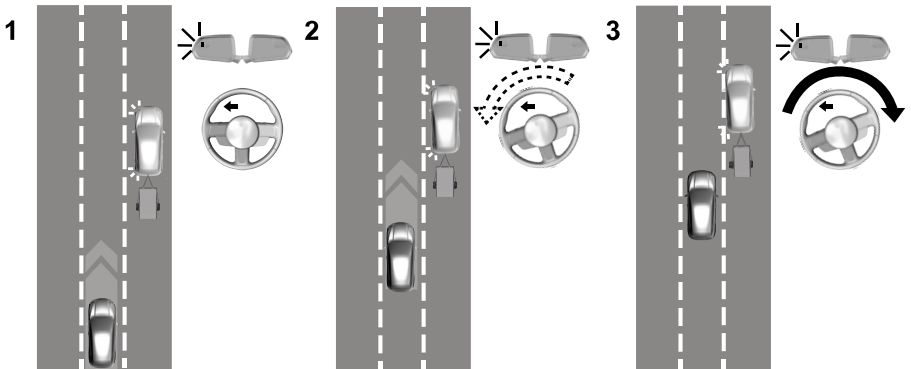


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator

flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 290).

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m (33 ft) to your vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage (page 292).
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

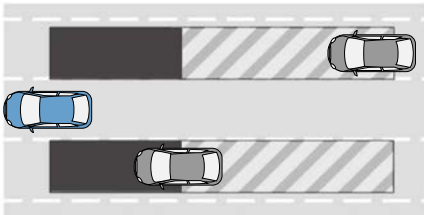
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

Blind Spot Information System

Note: The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

Note: The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: The system does not operate in reverse (R).

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

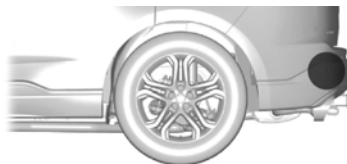
SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Blind Spot Information System** on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

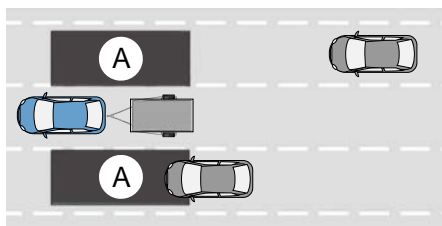
Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

Blind Spot Information System

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

Note: *The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE ON AND OFF

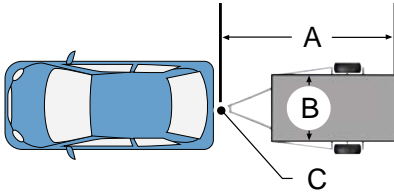
1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Blind Spot Information System**.
4. Switch **Trailer BLIS** on or off.

When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and the alert indicators flash twice.

Blind Spot Information System

Note: The system turns off and a message appears when a trailer is connected, but not set up or selected.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Add trailer** and follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Press **Trailer BLIS** and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.

Note: If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.

SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Select Active Trailer**.
4. Select an available trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.*

Message	Details
Blind spot assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind spot assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

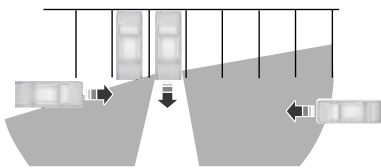
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The system does not apply the brakes if you override it by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

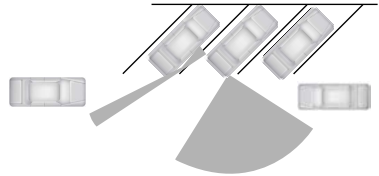
HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that approach at a speed between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start your vehicle and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.


CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS


WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Cross Traffic Alert

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Cross traffic alert with trailer coverage allows the system to continue operating with a trailer or trailer hitch attachment.

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the center display.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, an indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the center display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Note: If the arrows do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross traffic alert	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.
Applying brakes	

Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects other road users and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above. Pedestrian and cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Details
Alert	When activated, a warning flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic emergency braking	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above 30 km/h (19 mph).

Pre-Collision Assist


HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL


The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph).


HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL


The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 65 km/h (40 mph).


PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 **WARNING:** The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

 **WARNING:** System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast

Pre-Collision Assist

moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

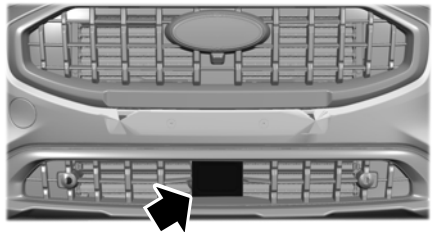
Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Pre-Collision Assist

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

DISTANCE INDICATION

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft).	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft).	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (55.8 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

Note: The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting.

Pre-Collision Assist

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Automatic Emergency Braking** on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 299).

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering Assist** on or off.

Note: Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

Pre-Collision Assist

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: No action is needed if the warning lamp illuminates without a corresponding information message. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 299).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-collision assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. Check the list of possible causes and actions in the table below. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The following table lists possible causes and details for when a blocked sensor message could display.

Cause	Details
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist

Cause	Details
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

Speed Sign Recognition

WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit.

HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *Speed sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 416). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, the speed limit appears in the instrument cluster display.

Speed Sign Recognition

Note: *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored speed sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.*

SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Driver Alert

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: *The system turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.*

RESETTING DRIVER ALERT

You can reset driver alert by:

- Switching the ignition off and on when your vehicle is stationary.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary.

Driver Alert

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an issue, for example, the camera

is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region not all messages are available.

Traffic Sign Recognition

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit, overtaking and right of way regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Traffic sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect traffic signs.

Map data could influence sign detection. Stored traffic sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 416). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop signs.
- Yield signs.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

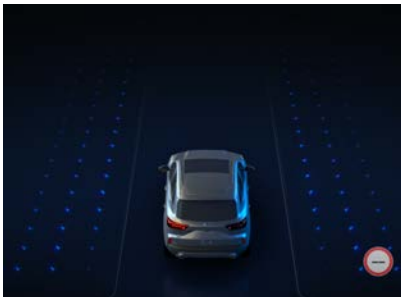
Traffic Sign Recognition

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.



When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.



When the system detects an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in two stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a speed limit for vehicles with a trailer sign.

Note: *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system.

Traffic Sign Recognition

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.

LIM Press and hold the button to temporarily switch the speed warning off.

Note: The speed warning turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Chime for Speed Limit Change

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Chime for Speed Limit Change** on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic sign recognition Reduced performance See manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Wrong Way Alert

WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

Note: *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 416). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.*

WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all traffic signs and could incorrectly read signs.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

The system does not operate in some countries. We recommend that you check system availability before use.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

The system could not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Wrong Way Alert** on or off.

Wrong Way Alert

WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING


WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES


Message	Details
Check driving direction	The system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Ensure you are driving in the correct direction.


Load Carrying


LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS


Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.


 **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

 **WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.


 **WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

 **WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Load Carrying



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or use Sport or Track mode when carrying a roof load. This could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Description	Maximum Recommended Load
Vehicles with panoramic roof	60 kg (130 lb)
Vehicles without panoramic roof	75 kg (165 lb)

Note: *The maximum roof load is based on the load being evenly distributed on the crossbars.*

Note: *When using a roof rack system, you must subtract the weight of the roof rack system from the maximum recommended load to determine your actual maximum cargo load. See the roof rack system manufacturer for more information.*

Luggage Compartment

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER



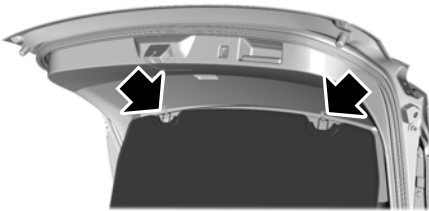
WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

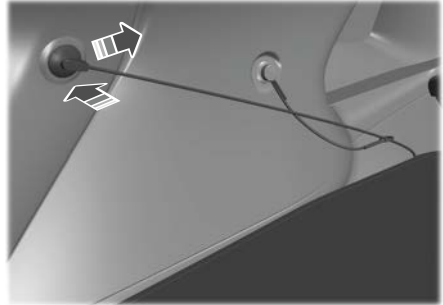
To install the luggage compartment cover:

1. Insert the luggage cover.



2. Insert the retaining clips into the liftgate trim panel.

Note: Make sure to support the luggage cover when inserting the retaining clips.



3. Attach the retaining cords to the luggage compartment trim panel.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, the luggage cover may be fitted with only one cord.

To remove the luggage compartment cover reverse above process.

Note: The luggage cover can be stowed in the luggage compartment.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

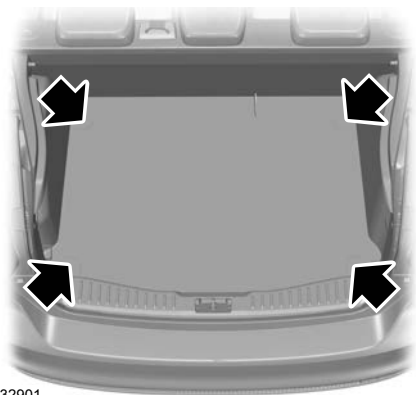
LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Luggage Compartment

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS



E132901

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL - VEHICLES WITH: DETACHABLE TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



WARNING: Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. Securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

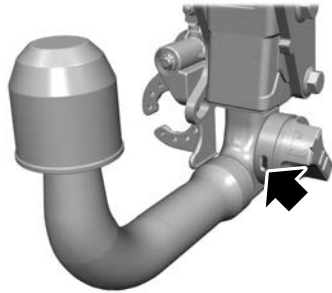
Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

Do not use any tools to detach or attach the tow ball arm.

Note: You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked.

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you attach the tow ball arm, check the following:



1. The mark on the handwheel is green.
2. You have locked the handwheel.
3. You have removed the key.

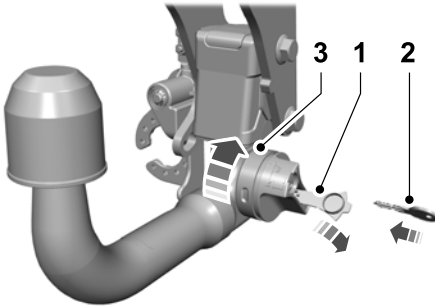
Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TOW BALL ARM GUIDELINES

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Regularly clean the trailer wiring connection socket and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

Connecting a Trailer

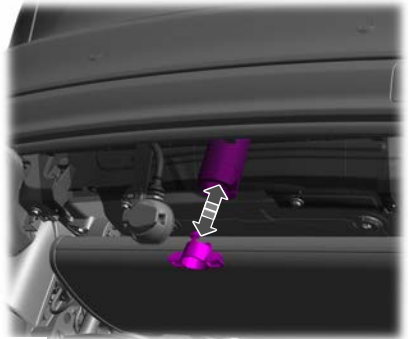
DETACHING THE TOW BALL ARM



1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Push the handwheel inward and turn it clockwise.

Note: *The mark on the handwheel turns from green to red.*

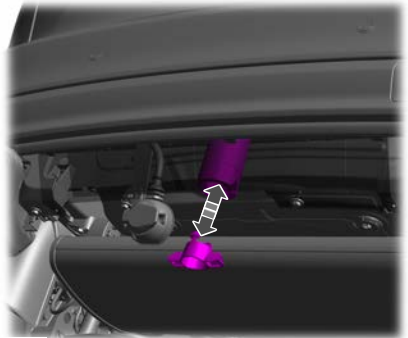
4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.



E265433

7. Insert the blanking plug.

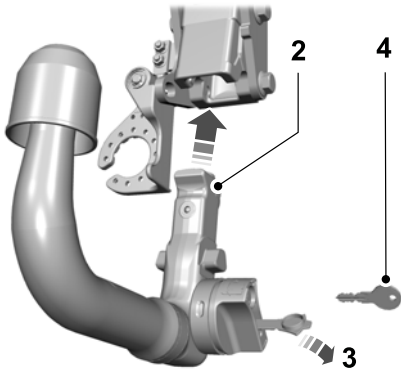
ATTACHING THE TOW BALL ARM



E265433

1. Remove the blanking plug.

Connecting a Trailer



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

You must retract the tow ball arm when not in use.

Do not use your foot or any tools to deploy or retract the tow ball arm.

Do not touch the tow ball arm when it is deploying or retracting to the released position.

Do not use the tow ball arm if no tones sound when deploying the tow ball arm or when you lock it into position. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Never retract the tow ball arm with a trailer attached. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

2. Fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages. Do not hold the handwheel.

Note: The mark on the handwheel turns from red to green.

3. Remove the protective cap.
4. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the handwheel.
5. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

TOW BALL - VEHICLES WITH: RETRACTABLE TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you deploy the tow ball arm, check the following:

- Make sure the tow ball arm is fully locked. It must not move if jerked or when you attach a trailer.
- The LED is not flashing and no warning tones sound.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TOW BALL LIMITATIONS

The tow ball arm does not retract or deploy if any of the following occur:

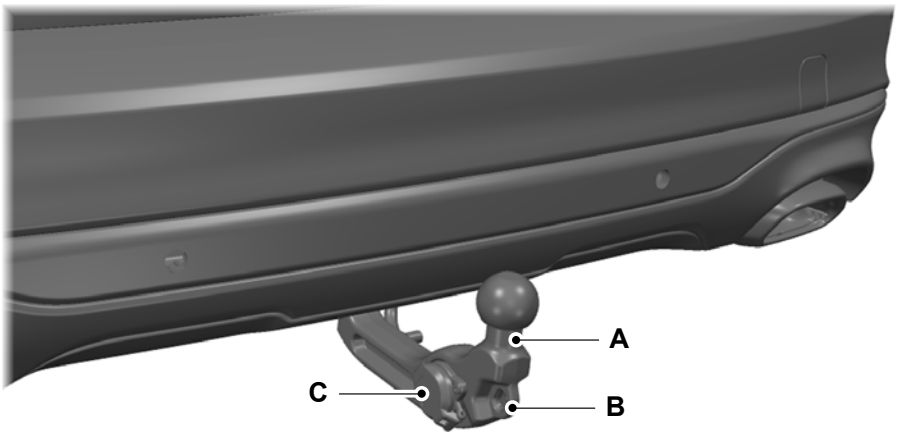
- Your vehicle is moving.
- The trailer wiring connection socket has a trailer wiring plug attached to it.
- The vehicle battery is not fully charged.
- The rear liftgate is closed.

Connecting a Trailer

TOW BALL ARM GUIDELINES

- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Clean the trailer wiring connection socket regularly and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you retract the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.
- When the tow bar is not in use, always retract the tow ball arm.
- It is advisable that you deploy and retract the tow ball arm at least once per month.

TOW BALL COMPONENTS



- A Tow ball arm in tow position.
- B Trailer safety cable attachment point.
- C Trailer wiring connection socket.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm or mechanism.

Connecting a Trailer

DEPLOYING THE TOW BALL ARM



E237201

1. Press the button. It is on the left hand side of the luggage compartment.

Note: The LED on the button illuminates and a double tone sounds.



2. Press the button again within four seconds to deploy the tow ball arm to the released position. The tow ball arm moves into the tow position.

Note: The LED on the button flashes and a series of tones sound when the tow ball arm deploys and reaches the released position. The LED on the button stops flashing and a double tone sounds when the tow ball arm locks into position.

Note: If you do not press the button again within four seconds, the system signals completion without deploying the tow ball arm. If the LED rapidly flashes and a high pitch tone sounds, repeat the process.

Note: A warning tone sounds for up to 30 seconds if the tow ball arm remains in an unlocked position.

If the deploy process is interrupted, for example tow ball arm movement is obstructed, the system reverses the movement. If the tow ball arm stops and remains in an unlocked position due to loss of power, or obstruction, the system needs resetting. Remove the obstruction and reset the system by fully repeating the process.

Note: Never use your foot to move or push the tow ball arm during its deploy process.

RETRACTING THE TOW BALL ARM

1. Disconnect the trailer wiring plug and unhitch the trailer or load carrier.



E237201

2. Press the button. It is on the left hand side of the luggage compartment.

Note: The LED on the button illuminates and a double tone sounds.

Connecting a Trailer



3. Press the button again within four seconds to retract the tow ball arm to the released position. The tow ball arm moves into the stowed position.

Note: The LED on the button flashes and a series of tones sound when the tow ball arm retracts and reaches the released position. The LED on the button stops flashing and a double tone sounds when the tow ball arm locks into position.

Note: If you do not press the button again within four seconds, the system signals completion without retracting the tow ball arm. If the LED rapidly flashes and a high pitch tone sounds, repeat the process.

Note: A warning tone sounds for up to 30 seconds if the tow ball arm remains in an unlocked position.

If the deploy process is interrupted, for example tow ball arm movement is obstructed, the system reverses the movement. If the tow ball arm stops and remains in an unlocked position due to loss of power, or obstruction, the system needs resetting. Remove the obstruction and reset the system by fully repeating the process.

Note: Never use your foot to move or push the tow ball arm during its deploy process.

CONNECTING A TRAILER

Recognizing a Trailer

Make sure to connect the trailer to your vehicle with a proper fitting connector that supports your vehicle and the trailer functions.

1. Attach the trailer and wiring connector to your vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on.
3. Set up a profile for the trailer using the touchscreen.

Note: If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.

Managing Trailer Profiles

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.

You can perform multiple actions from this menu.

See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 292). See **Trailer Towing Navigation** (page 438).

Towing a Trailer

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft). See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 413).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 325).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

Towing a Trailer

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

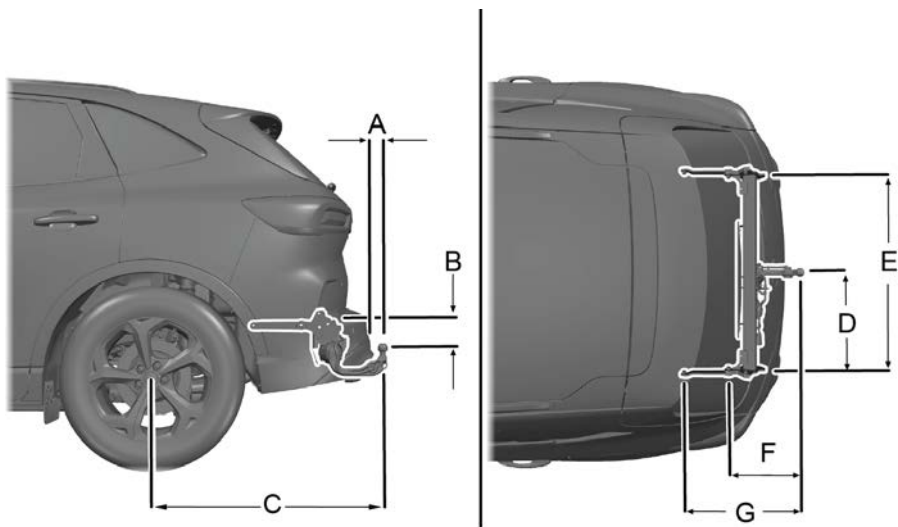
TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

kg (lb)
100 (220.5)

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS



Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	95 (3.7)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	165.8 (6.5)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,033 (40.7)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	530 (20.9)

Towing a Trailer

Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
E	Distance between side members.	1,060 (41.7)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	308.5 (12.1)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	393.5 (15.5)

Driving Hints

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 215).

PRECONDITIONING YOUR VEHICLE FOR COLD WEATHER DRIVING

- Fully charge your vehicle before heading out into cold weather. This helps maximize your driving range.
- Plug in your vehicle to maintain the best battery operating temperature before driving.

- When your vehicle is plugged in it uses energy from your charging source to heat the cabin and ensure maximum battery charge level.
- To maximize battery charge level, use heated seats and a lower climate control temperature setting.

Note: You can precondition your vehicle prior to your departure using the FordPass app.

Note: Pre-heating function may not be available in certain vehicles.

BREAKING-IN

Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.

Driving Hints

- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

DRIVING IN SPECIAL CONDITIONS

DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 329).

DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hand braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

Note: *Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.*

Driving Hints

DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the information display. See **All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 214).

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

FLOOR MATS



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Driving Hints



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Note: Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Crash and Breakdown Information

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m (16 ft) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m (49 ft) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

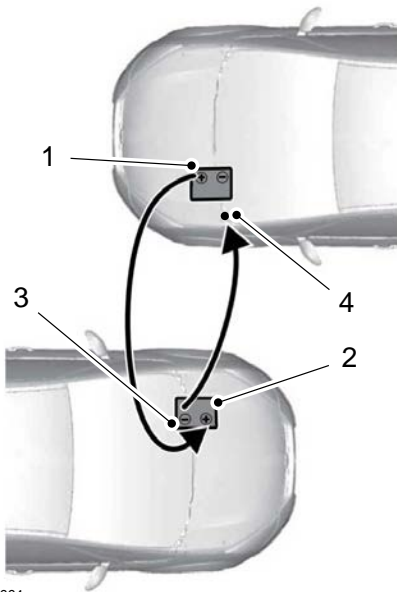
Connecting the Jumper Cables



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

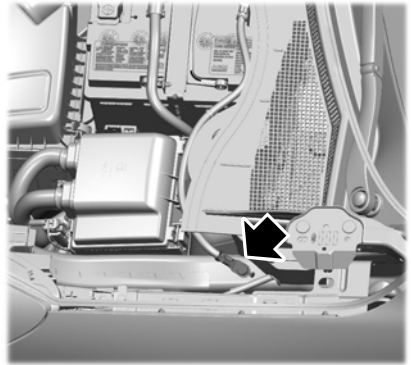
Note: *If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.*

Crash and Breakdown Information



E142664

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Crash and Breakdown Information

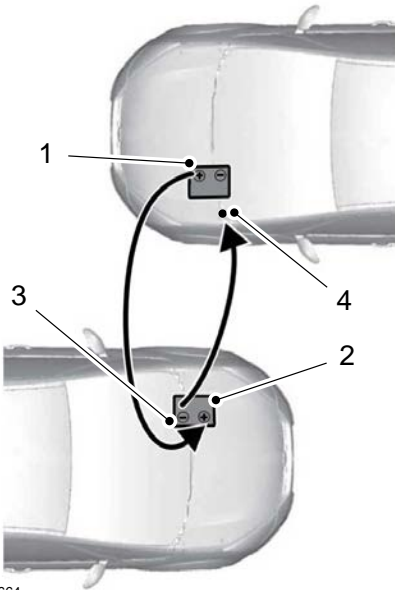
JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Connecting the Jumper Cables



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

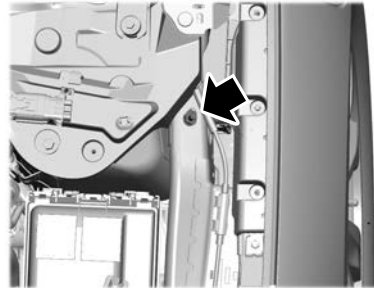
Note: If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



E142664

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

Note: The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Crash and Breakdown Information

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

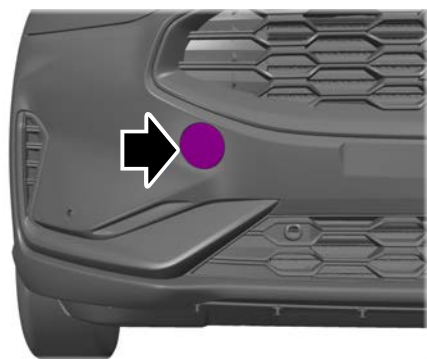
RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT

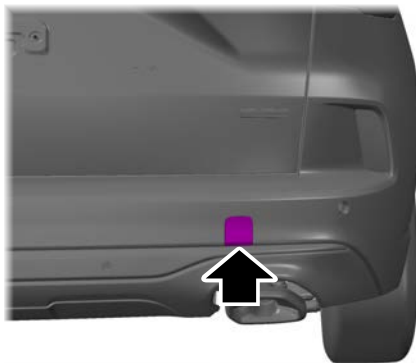


1. Gently press and release the towing eye attachment point cover at the position indicated.

2. Gently pull it straight out.

Note: The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT

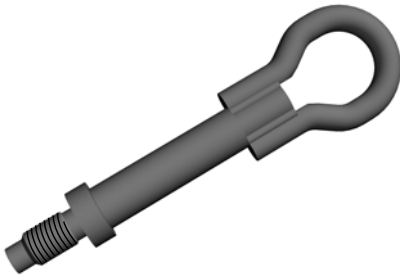


1. Gently press the top of the towing eye attachment point cover inward.
2. Gently lift it upward and then pull it straight out.

Note: The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

Crash and Breakdown Information

LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



The towing eye is in the spare wheel storage tray.

Note: You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

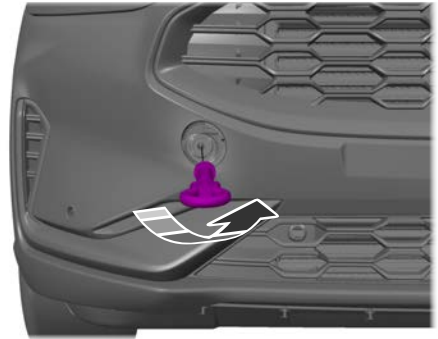
INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE



WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



1. Install the towing eye.

Note: The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

Note: The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

FAIL-SAFE COOLING

WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

Crash and Breakdown Information

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

Note: *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.*

DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 122).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Towing Your Vehicle - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Neutral tow engaged Turn ignition off for towing	Reminder to switch off the ignition when in neutral tow.
Neutral tow engaged Depress brake and select Park to exit Neutral tow	Displays when neutral tow is active and you want to exit neutral tow.
Neutral tow Remove park brake for towing	Reminder to remove park brake when in neutral tow.
Neutral tow disengaged	Displays when the neutral tow is off.
Neutral tow enabled Leave transmission in neutral	Displays when neutral tow is on.

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 122).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.

Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Emergency Equipment

STORING A FIRST AID KIT

You can store the first aid kit in the luggage compartment.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE

You can store the warning triangle in the luggage compartment.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



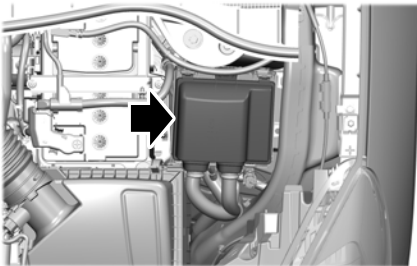
WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.



WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

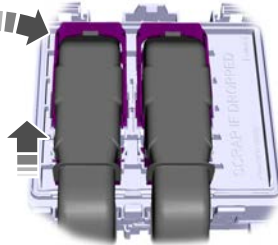


ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.

2

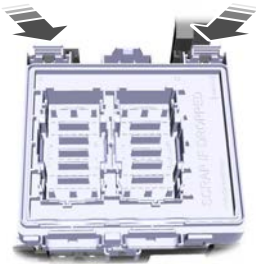


3

E253689

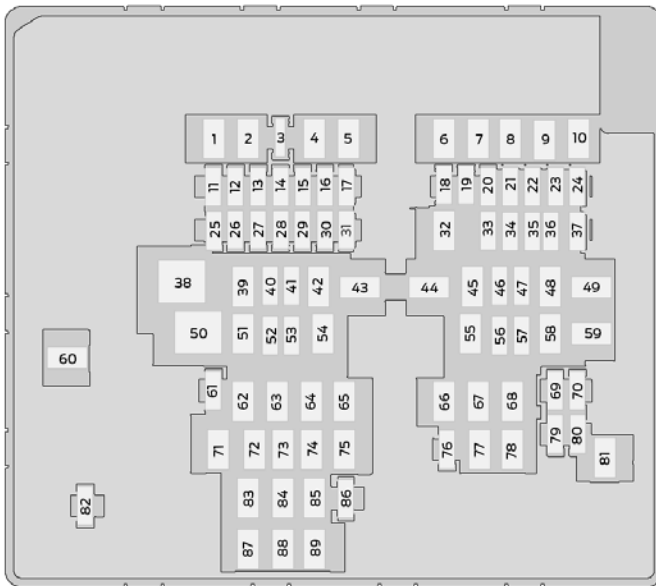
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

Fuses



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	20 A	Right-hand headlamp.
2	40 A	Left-hand windshield defroster.
3	—	Not used.
4	60 A	Supplemental heater - Gasoline.
5	40 A	Supplemental heater - Gasoline.
6	40 A	Supplemental heater - Gasoline.
7	40 A	Right-hand windshield defroster.
8	—	Not used.
9	—	Not used.
10	20 A	Left-hand headlamp.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Powertrain control module.
13	15 A	Powertrain control module.
14	15 A	Powertrain control module.
15	—	Not used.
16	5 A	Fuel operated heater remote control.
17	20 A	Steering column lock.
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module - Gasoline.
		Brake system control module - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
20	—	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
21	5 A	Headlamp control module.
22	5 A	Battery electronic control module - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
23	5 A	Charge port light ring - Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
24	20 A	Amplifier.
25	—	Not used.
26	—	Not used.
27	10 A	Battery electronic control module - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
28	10 A	Brake on-off switch.
29	5 A	Keep alive power - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
30	10 A	Electronic stability program ignition feed - Gasoline.
		Transmission oil pump - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
31	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	20 A	Front parking aid camera.
34	10 A	Headlamp leveling.
35	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
36	—	Not used.
37	20 A	Horn.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	—	Not used.
41	20 A	Amplifier.

Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
42	—	Not used.
43	50 A	Electric water pump - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
44	40 A	Trailer tow module.
45	20 A	Extendable towbar.
46	20 A	Transmission oil temperature sensor.
47	20 A	Heated seats.
48	40 A	Anti-lock brake control valves - Gasoline.
		Brake system control module valves - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake control pump - Gasoline.
		Brake system control module motor - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	30 A	Moonroof.
52	5 A	USB smart charger.
53	—	Not used.
54	40 A	Passenger seat module.
55	40 A	Driver seat module.
56	5 A	Direct Current to Direct Current converter - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	40 A	Auxiliary power distribution box - Hybrid Electric Vehicle.
59	40 A	Body control module.

Fuses

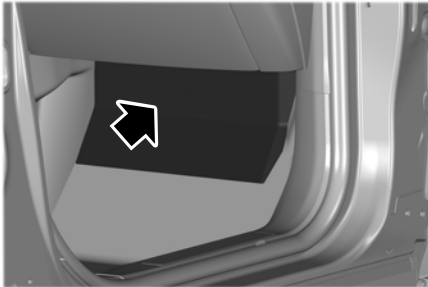
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
60	—	Not used.
61	20 A	Rear window washer pump.
62	20 A	Rear charge powerpoint.
63	20 A	Powerpoint.
64	30 A	Climate controlled seat module.
65	30 A	Power liftgate.
66	—	Not used.
67	20 A	Rear heated seats.
68	20 A	Fuel operated heater module - Gasoline.
69	5 A	Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor.
70	15 A	Port fuel injectors.
71	20 A	Rear console powerpoint.
72	20 A	Media bin powerpoint.
73	20 A	Rear window wiper.
74	—	Not used.
75	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
76	10 A	Heated exterior mirrors.
77	30 A	Rear window defroster.
78	30 A	Starter motor.
79	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
80	10 A	Headlamp washer.
81	20 A	Fuel pump.
82	—	Not used.
83	40 A	Power inverter.
84	—	Not used.

Fuses

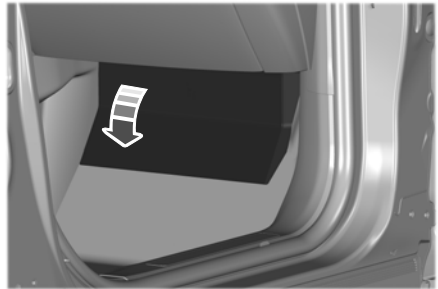
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
85	40 A	Driveline control module.
86	5 A	Rain sensor.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.
89	—	Not used.

BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

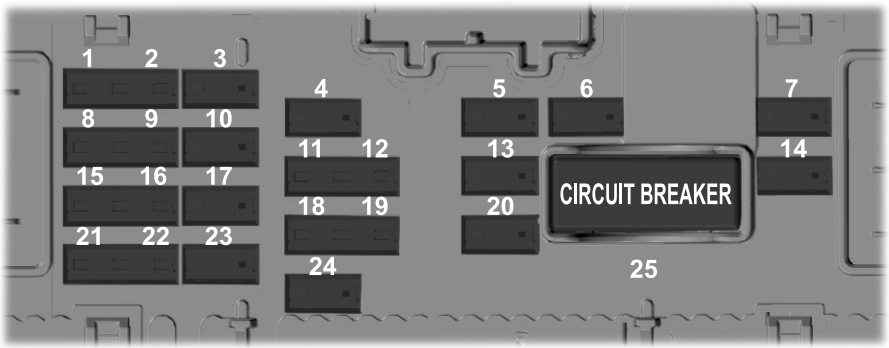


ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

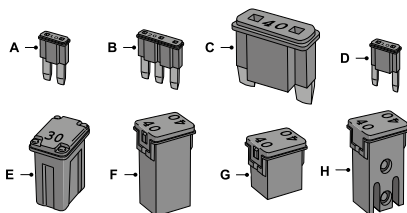


Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	Climate controlled seat module.
3	-	Not used.
4	10 A	Integrated control panel. Navigation display. Enhanced central gateway.
5	20 A	Central locking system.
6	10 A	Moonroof.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	All-wheel drive control module.
9	5 A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Electrochromic rear-view centre mirror.
10	10 A	Embedded modem.
11	5 A	Power liftgate. Hands-free liftgate actuation module. Power windows.
12	5 A	Combined intrusion and inclination sensor.
13	15 A	Driver door unlock.

Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Double lock. Child lock.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	-	Not used.
16	-	Not used.
17	15 A	SYNC module.
18	7.5 A	Head up display module. Wireless charging module.
19	-	Not used.
20	-	Not used.
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module. Ignition switch.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Battery back-up sounder. (Right-hand drive vehicles).
25	-	Not used.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.

- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

Fuses

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

- If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

- If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

- You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

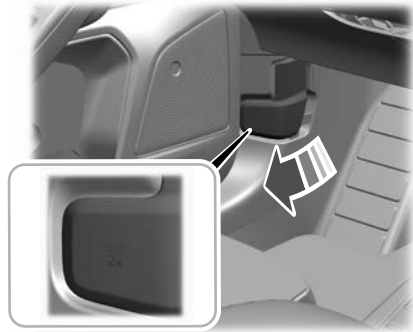
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 400).

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood



1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

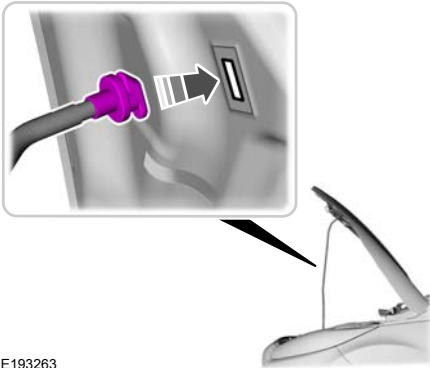
Note: *This action releases the hood latch.*

Note: *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

Note: *There is no secondary hood release under the hood.*


Maintenance



E193263

5. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

 **WARNING:** Make sure that you fully latch the hood before driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm (10–14 in).

Warning Lamps and Indicators



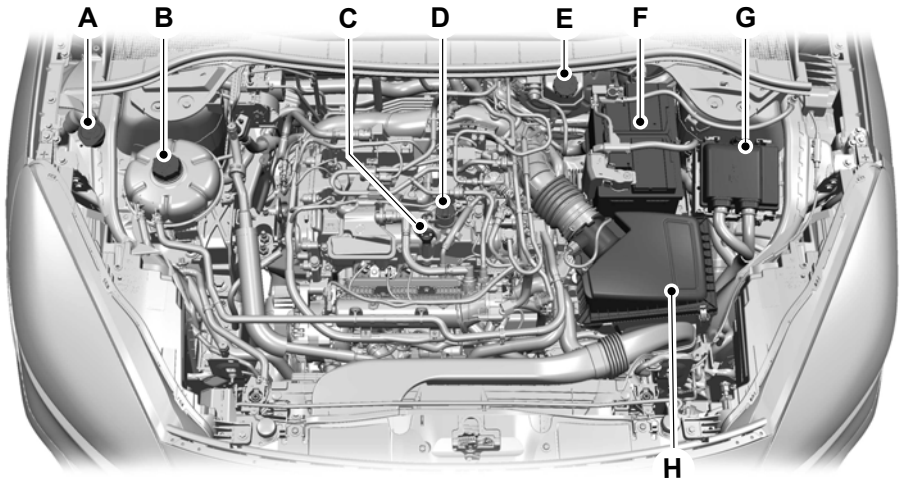
This lamp illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Information Messages

Message	Action
Bonnet open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

Maintenance

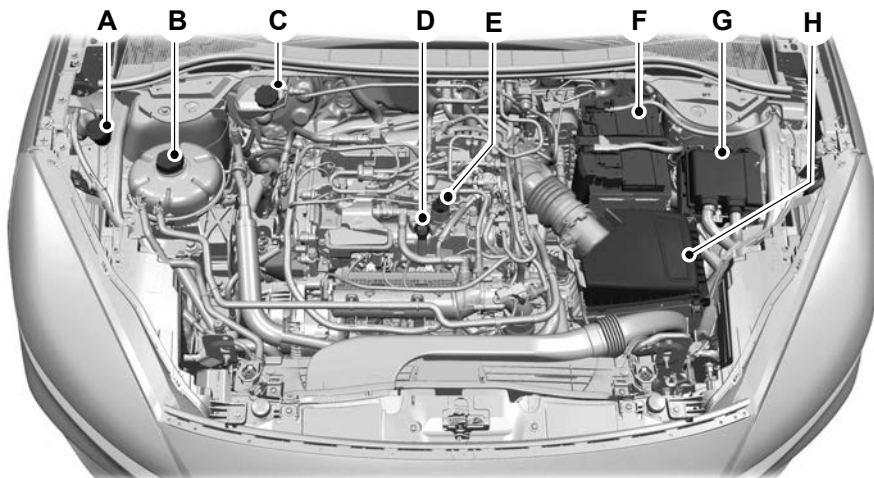
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™, LHD



- A Windshield washer fluid. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 79).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 362).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 360).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 361).
- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 215).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 367).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 344).
- H Air filter assembly.

Maintenance

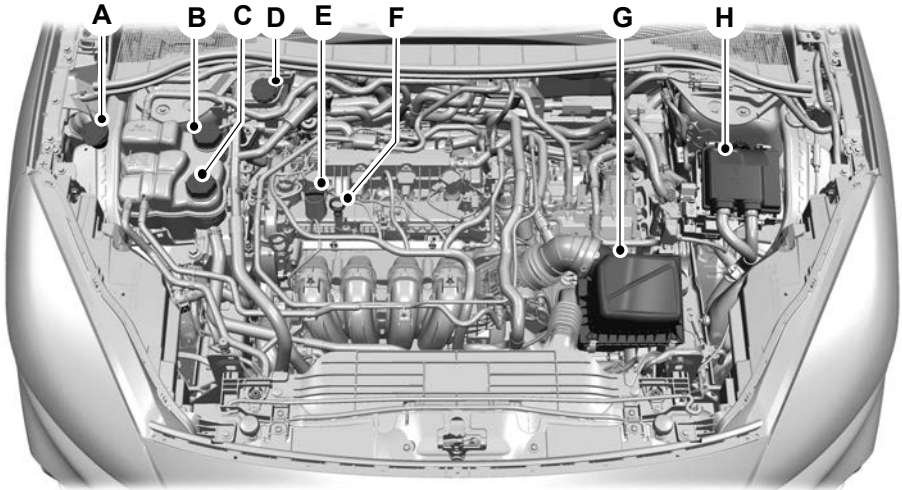
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™, RHD



- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 79).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 362).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 215).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 360).
- E Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 361).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 367).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 344).
- H Air filter assembly.

Maintenance

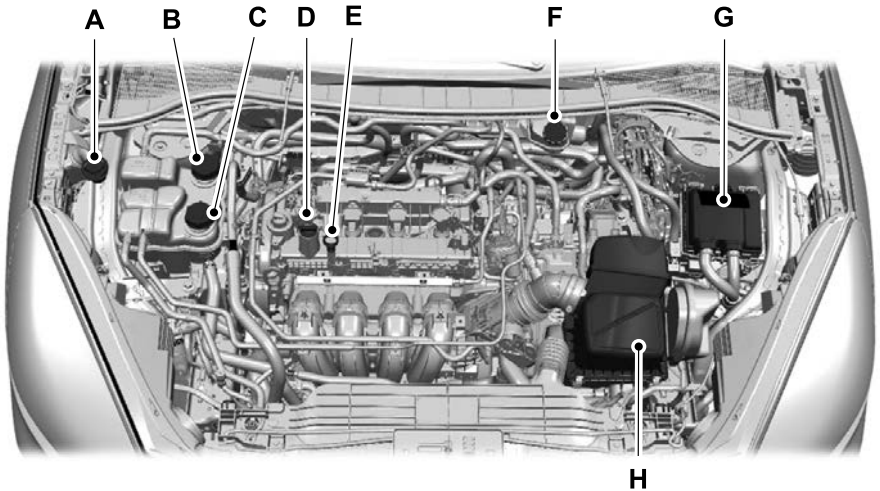
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), RHD



- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 79).
- B Low pressure engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 362).
- C High pressure engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 362).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 215).
- E Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 361).
- F Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 360).
- G Air filter assembly.
- H Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 344).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), LHD

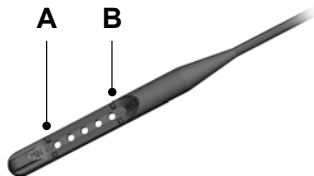


- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir: See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 79).
- B Low temperature coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 362).
- C High temperature coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 362).
- D Engine oil filler cap: See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 361).
- E Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 360).
- F Brake fluid reservoir: See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 215).
- G Power distribution box: See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 345).
- H Air filter assembly:

Maintenance

ENGINE OIL

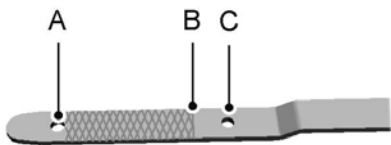
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



E264320

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - FULL HYBRID/ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



E225040

- A Minimum.
- B Fill Level.
- C Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.

Note: If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

Note: Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.

Note: If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Maintenance

ADDING ENGINE OIL



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 400).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Under certain conditions the vehicle's intelligent oil life monitor may determine that your oil requires replacement prior to your general service. Should this occur it is recommended you replace your oil within two weeks or 800 km (500 mi) of being alerted.

Your authorized dealer will be able to advise you whether only an engine oil and filter change is recommended or whether you should complete your general service inclusive of oil and oil filter.

Checking the Current State of Oil Life

You can check the current state of oil life in percentage.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Oil Life**.

RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Oil Life**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Maintenance

ENGINE OIL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Change engine oil soon	Displays when the engine oil life is becoming depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Oil change required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Engine oil level low Add oil	Displays when the engine oil level is too low. Add engine oil as soon as possible. See Adding Engine Oil (page 361).

COOLANT

COOLANT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Maintenance

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 400). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 400). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.

Maintenance

2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 400).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The

Maintenance

amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 337).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Engine coolant overtemperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Checking the Coolant Level (page 362).
Stop safely now	

Maintenance

12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

Maintenance

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 354).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.

Maintenance

5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 96).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The battery is in the luggage compartment.

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

Note: If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

4. Remove the battery securing clamp.
5. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
6. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
7. Remove the battery.

Maintenance

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Resetting Window Bounce-Back** (page 97).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.*

RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See Jump Starting the Vehicle (page 334). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

Maintenance

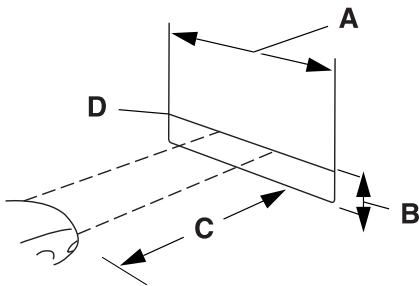
12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Message	Action
12V battery malfunction Service soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric range reduced due to park/hazard lamps on while vehicle off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.
Electrical system drain Service required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any after-market devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer or you can follow the instructions below.

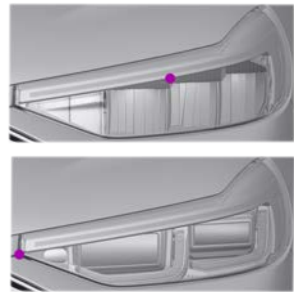


- A 8 feet (2.5 meters)
- B Center height of lamp to ground

- C 33 feet (10 meters)
- D Horizontal reference line

1. Park the vehicle perpendicular in front of a wall or screen on a level surface approximately 10 m (33 ft) away and align the steering wheel to the center position.

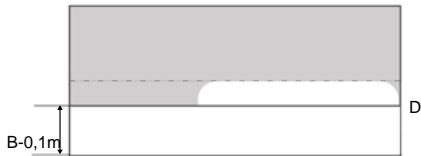
Note: Keep the headlamps free from dirt.



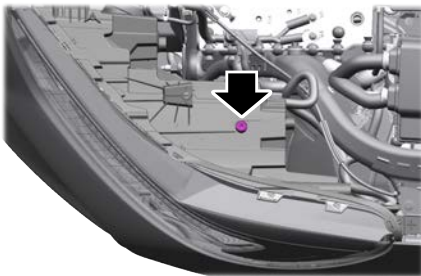
Note: The first illustration shows the low beam optical center height for the LED reflector headlamps, the second illustration shows the low beam optical center height for LED projector headlamps.

Maintenance

2. Measure the low beam optical center height from the ground. Subtract 10 cm (3.94 in) from center height of lamp to the ground and mark a 2.5 m (8 ft) horizontal reference line at this height.
3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.
5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp. The high intensity flat light zone should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.



4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light and an additional light zone located on top of it. If the flat zone of the high intensity light is not at the marked horizontal reference line, the headlamp needs to be adjusted.



Note: To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp when adjusting the other.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs do not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and provide quality bulb illumination time.

Maintenance

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Headlamp low beam.	LED.	-
Headlamp high beam.	LED.	-
Front turn signal lamp.	LED.	-
Daytime running lamps.	LED.	-
Front fog lamp.	LED.	-
Rear lamp and stoplamp.	LED.	-
Rear fog lamp.	P21W	21
License plate lamp.	LED.	-
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	-

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Note: If the rear fog lamps fail have your vehicle checked.

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Bulb	Specification	Power (Watts)
Glove compartment lamp.	T-3.	2.6
Vanity mirror lamp.	T5.	1.3

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *We recommend cleaning the power sliding rear window at regular intervals to avoid dust and debris accumulation to deliver appropriate function.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Vehicle Care

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.

Note: *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

Note: *Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.*

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.

- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C (73°F).

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Vehicle Care

3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
 4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
 5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
 3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING MOONROOF TRACKS

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

Note: *The moonroof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.*

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensures your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Rewax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

12 Volt Battery

- When storing your vehicle for longer than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend to disconnect the 12v battery to reduce system loads on the battery, or you can use a trickle charger for longer storage periods.
- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Storing Your Vehicle

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.
- To minimize flat spots on the tires, inflate all four tires to the recommended cold pressures listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle. When the vehicle is taken out of storage, reset the tire pressures as necessary to the recommended levels listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle.

Note: *If you store your vehicle in a location with low ambient temperatures, follow the instructions for care of summer tires. See **Using Summer Tires** (page 381).*

Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake fully release.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.

- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Wheel and Tire Information

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 382).

USING SNOW CHAINS



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 225/65R17 or 225/60R18.
 - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).

Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 382).

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **How Does Stability Control Work** (page 231).

Note: *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 382).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS



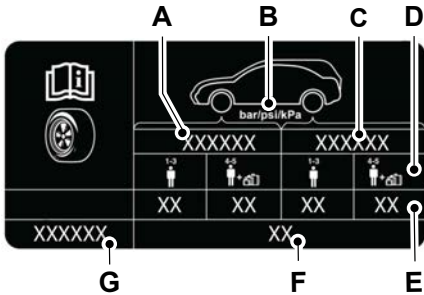
WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *You probably need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.*

Tire Care



- A Front tire size.
- B Measure unit.
- C Rear tire size.
- D Vehicle load.
- E Tire pressure.
- F Spare wheel tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire size.

Tire size	Normal load		Full load or trailer tow	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
225/65 R17 ¹	2.4 bar (35 psi)	2.1 bar (30 psi)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	3 bar (44 psi)
225/60 R18 ¹	2.4 bar (35 psi)	2.1 bar (30 psi)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	3 bar (44 psi)
225/55 R19	2.4 bar (35 psi)	2.1 bar (30 psi)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	3 bar (44 psi)
245/45 R20	2.4 bar (35 psi)	2.1 bar (30 psi)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	3 bar (44 psi)

¹Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
T165/70R17	4.2 (60)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

Tire Care

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismounted and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.



WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

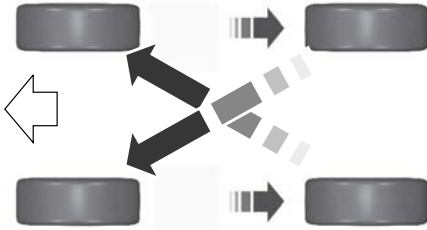
Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

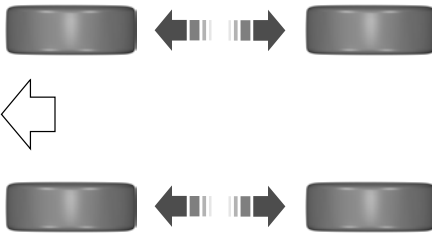
Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Tire Care

Non-directional tires



Directional tires



E70415

Note: Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

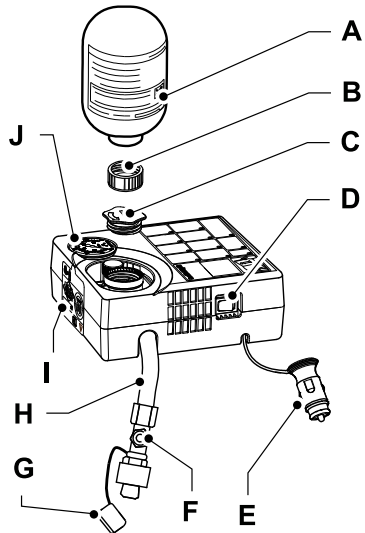
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit is located under the load floor in the rear of the vehicle.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS



- A Sealant bottle.
- B Bottle cap.
- C Sealant bottle access cap.
- D Power switch.
- E 12 volt DC power point connector.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

- F Pressure release valve.
- G Protective cap.
- H Tire inflation pipe.
- I Warning Label.
- J Pressure gauge.

Note: Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT



WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

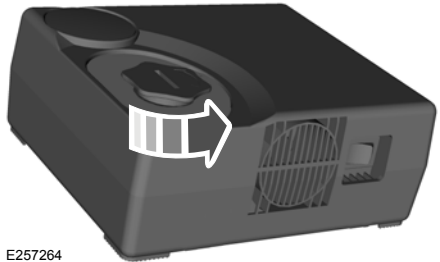
1. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.



E257263

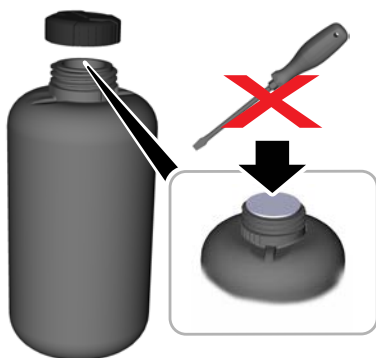
2. To temporarily repair a punctured tire, release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E257264

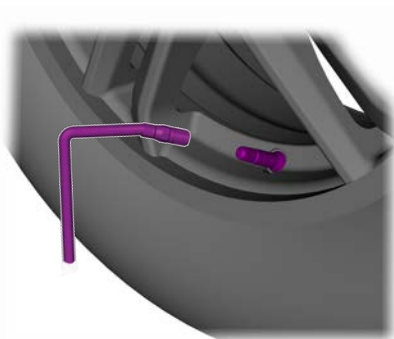
3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



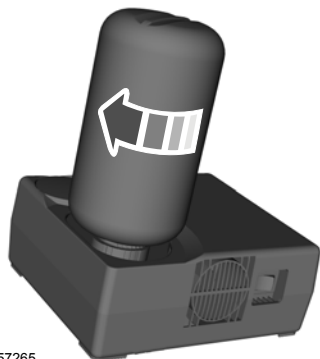
E256963

4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.



E257006

6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



E257265

5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

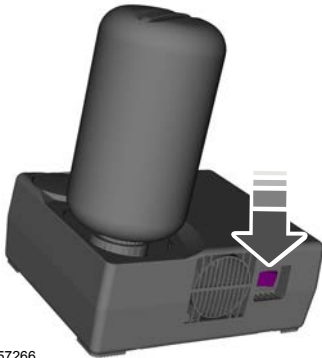
Note: Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.



E257022

7. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket.
8. Start the engine.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257266

WARNING: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

9. Switch the compressor on.



WARNING: Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.

10. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi).

Note: If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

11. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and the ignition off.

12. Disconnect the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

Note: Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

13. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.

14. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



E257942

15. Immediately drive your vehicle for 3–10 km (2–6 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



16. After driving between 3–10 km (2–6 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 382).

Note: If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26.1 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

Note: If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 1.8 bar (26 psi), use the kit to inflate the tire again.

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

Note: *If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.*

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

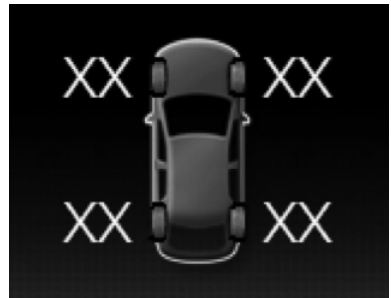
The warning lamp can illuminate when:

- You use a spare wheel or a tire sealant and inflator kit.
- The outside air temperature drops significantly. The tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp. Check each tire to verify that none are flat. Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

Note: *Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.*

Note: *After you inflate the tires to the correct pressure, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning lamp to turn off.*

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Tyre Pressure**.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

Note: *If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.*

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Tyre Monitor**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp combines functions.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly underinflated	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See Tire Pressure Specifications (page 382). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tyre pressure low	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).



WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as the your vehicle road wheels, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner. We recommend that you have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheels, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.

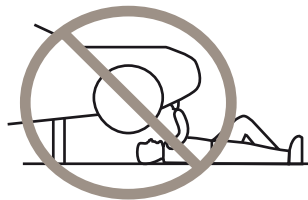
Note: *Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.*

Note: *The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted. Take care when parking next to a curb.*

Note: *If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.*

On Plug-in and Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles you can find the jack and wrench to the left of the spare tire.

On Non Plug-in or Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles, you can find the jack and wrench under the spare tire.

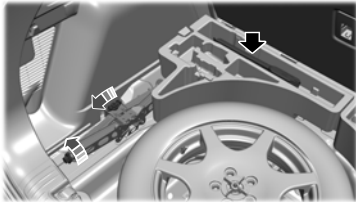


WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

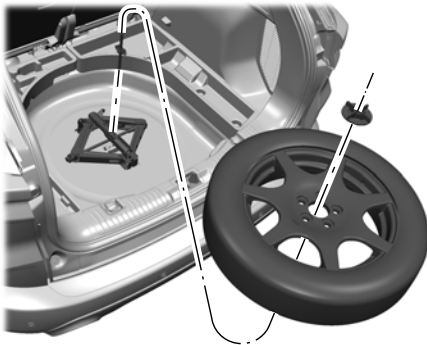
Changing a Road Wheel

Note: *The jack does not require maintenance or additional lubrication over the service life of your vehicle with normal usage.*

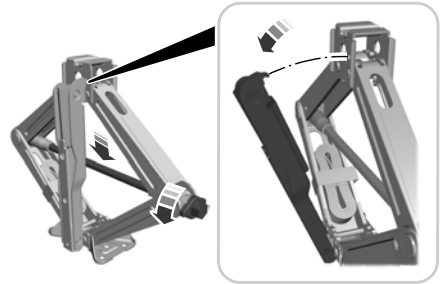
1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.
3. Lift and remove the carpeted cargo area floor to access the spare tire, jack and wheel nut wrench.
4. Remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Remove the spare tire and jack kit from the spare tire compartment.



6. Remove the jack and the flat tire retainer strap from the jack base.



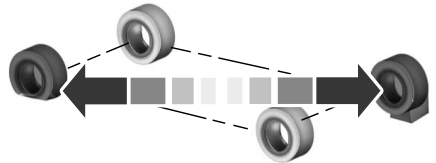
7. Turn the jack hex nut drive screw counterclockwise to detach the wheel nut wrench from the jack. This lowers the jack and releases the mechanical lock.



8. Unfold the wheel nut wrench for use.

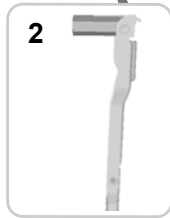
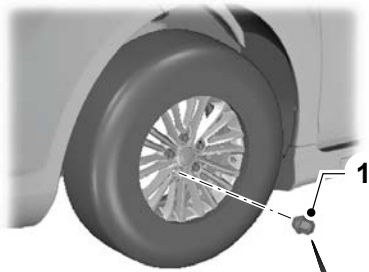


9. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.



10. Loosen each wheel nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

Changing a Road Wheel

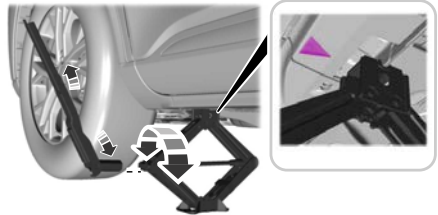


WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

11. The vehicle jacking points shown here are also depicted on the warning label on the jack. Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.



12. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is completely off the ground.



13. Remove the wheel nuts with the wheel nut wrench.

Note: For vehicles with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.



WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

Changing a Road Wheel

14. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the wheel nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the wheel nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
15. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
16. Remove the jack and fully tighten the wheel nuts in the order shown.



WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.



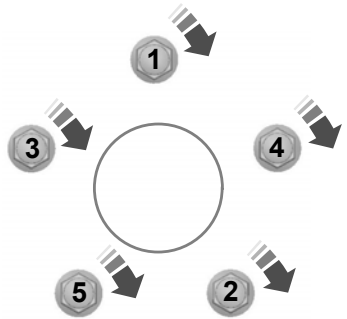
WARNING: Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.



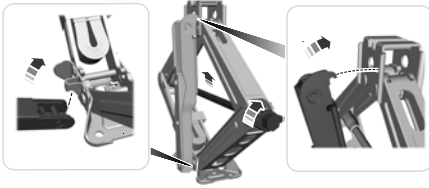
Stowing the flat tire

1. To store the jack kit on Non Plug-in or Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles, fold the jack and wrench handle and engage it to the bracket of the jack base using the wheel nut wrench pin.

Note: To store the jack and wrench on Plug-in and Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles, fold the jack and wrench into the closed position, and place the wrench into the storage compartment. Position the jack assembly into the closed position and make sure the jack is fastened securely before you drive.

2. When attaching the folded wrench on the jack, swing the wrench upward and adjust the jack height until the wrench hook engages the hole on the jack. Tighten the hex nut clockwise until secure.

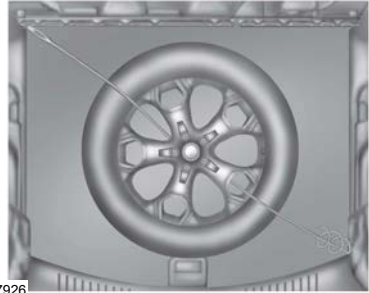
Changing a Road Wheel



3. Re-position the jack kit assembly into the original vehicle position and secure with the plastic wing nut. Make sure the jack is fastened securely before you drive.
4. Unblock the wheels.
5. Stow the flat tire on the floor in the cargo area. Secure with the flat tire retainer strap by following the next steps:



6. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.



7. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
8. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the cargo area to the tie-down used in Step 6. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
9. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.

1



2



3



Changing a Road Wheel

WHEEL NUTS



WARNING: Only use the specific wheel nuts and wheels provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Nm (lb.ft)
135 (100)

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.



A Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	11:1
Displacement.	1,497 cm ³ (91.35 in ³)
Firing order.	1-2-3
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.65–0.75 mm (0.026–0.030 in)

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV), PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Item	Specification
Engine position.	Transversal
Engine type.	2.5L Duratec – Hybrid
Number and arrangement of cylinders.	Inline 4 cylinder
Valves.	4 per cylinder
Cylinder bore.	89 mm (3.50 in)
Stroke.	100 mm (3.94 in)
Compression ratio.	13:1
Displacement.	2.5L iVCT
Engine output.	120 kW (161 hp) @ 6000 rpm
Maximum torque.	207 Nm (153 lb.ft) @ 4000 rpm
Maximum engine speed.	6250 rpm
Engine speed at idle.	1250 rpm
Fuel system.	Port Fuel Injection
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Air induction type.	Naturally aspirated
Spark plug gap.	1.3 mm (0.051 in)

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Dimension Description	All
Maximum length.	4,604–4,645 mm (181.3–182.9 in)
Overall width excluding mirrors.	1,882 mm (74.1 in)
Overall width including mirrors.	2,177 mm (85.7 in)
Overall height.	1,651–1,683 mm (65.0–66.3 in)
Wheelbase.	2,711 mm (106.7 in)

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	4.73 L (5.00 qt)

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20	WSS-M2C954-A1

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C954-A1, you can top-up with a SAE 0W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C6.

Note: Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.11 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.4 L (1.19 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20	WSS-M2C954-A1

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C954-A1, you can top-up with a

SAE 0W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C6.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.11 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with automatic transmission.	7.5 L (1.65 gal)
Vehicles with manual transmission.	6.4 L (1.41 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. It may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

Note: *The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.*

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low temperature cooling circuit.	4.7 L (1.03 gal)
High temperature cooling circuit.	9.1 L (2.00 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. It may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

Note: *The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.*

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low temperature cooling circuit.	6.2 L (1.36 gal)
High temperature cooling circuit.	9.6 L (2.11 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

WSS-M97B57-A2 is yellow coolant. It may appear fluorescent green in some cooling systems which is a normal characteristic.

Note: *The WSS-M97B57-A2 yellow coolant is compatible with the WSS-M97B44-D orange coolant so all vehicles with orange coolant can be serviced with yellow coolant. However, if the vehicle was manufactured with yellow coolant it must be serviced with yellow coolant to maintain a longer service life.*

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
AWD.	54 L (11.9 gal)
FWD.	51 L (11.2 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
AWD.	54 L (11.9 gal)
FWD.	51 L (11.2 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	42 L (9.2 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.48 kg (16.9 oz)	120 cm ³ (4.1 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-12 FU7J-M2C300-AA	WSS-M2C300-A2

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - FULL HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (FHEV), PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities and Specifications

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.5 kg (17.6 oz)	140 cm ³ (4.7 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-BEV DU7J-M2C31-BA	WSS-M2C31-B2

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Eight-speed automatic transmission (8F35).	11 L (11.6 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AB,HU7J-M2C949-BA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Note: Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 1-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.7 L (5.0 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Oil P-ULV HU7J-M2C949-AB,HU7J-M2C949-BA	WSS-M2C949-A,

Note: Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Capacities and Specifications

Note: We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Fluid changes or level checks are not required, unless a leak is suspected or the assembly has been submerged in water.

If submerged or suspecting a leak, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	0.75 L (0.8 qt)

Materials

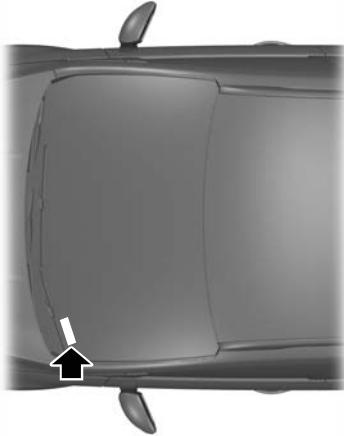
Name	Specification
Rear Axle Oil SAE 75W FM JU7J-19G518-AA	-

Vehicle Identification

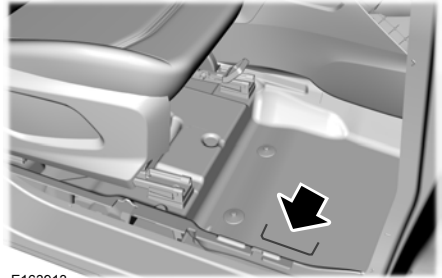
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



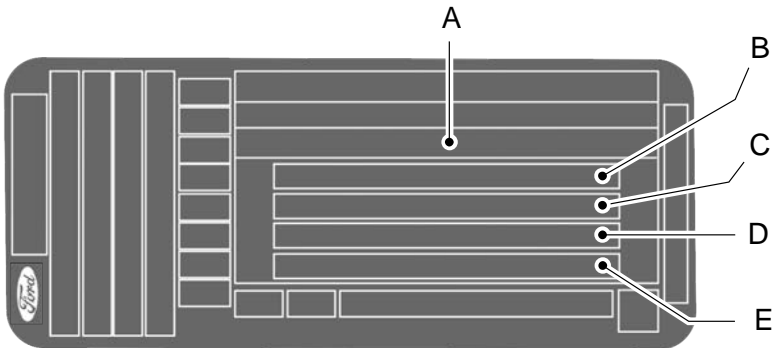
Stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, in front of the front seat.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



Vehicle Identification

- A Vehicle identification number.
- B Gross vehicle weight.
- C Gross train weight.
- D Maximum front axle weight.
- E Maximum rear axle weight.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View Available Networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

Note: Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Connected Vehicle

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

Note: The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Hotspot Visibility**.

Note: The hotspot visibility default setting is on.

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.

Note: The network name is the hotspot name.

4. Press **Show Password**.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: Secure websites do not redirect.

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

Note: If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

Note: If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

Note: If you carry out a vehicle system reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

Note: The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Network Name**.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press **Done**.
8. Press **Change Password**.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press **Done**.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

Note: *The Vehicle Hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will be unable to connect your device to the Vehicle Hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control or on the touchscreen.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

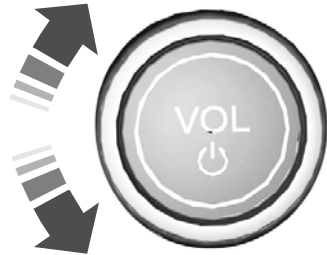


Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

Note: *Not all sources can be paused. The button mutes these sources.*

Note: *The mute button on the steering wheel pauses the media source.*

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

SWITCHING SHUFFLE MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

Note: *Not all sources have shuffle mode.*

SWITCHING REPEAT MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch repeat mode on or off.

Audio System

Note: *Not all sources have repeat mode.*

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: *A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.*

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

Note: *The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.*



Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.


SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

-  Press the settings icon on the touchscreen.
- Press **Sound settings**.
- Select the desired menu point and adjust the settings.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

- Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
- Press **Clock settings**.
- Set the time.

Note: *The AM and PM options are not available if 24-hour mode is on.*

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

- Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
- Press **Clock settings**.
- Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

FM RADIO

FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN FM RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

Audio System

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Audio System



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press **Stations** on the touchscreen to view available stations.

Center Display Overview

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h (5 mph).

STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

Audio System



Audio system muted.

Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Media player connected using **Bluetooth®**.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Unread email message.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Center Display Overview

Vehicle Software Update

See **Software Update Indicators** (page 444).

Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

You can swipe up or down to view a different card.

Note: *On some screens, you can swipe a card toward the center of the screen to move the content into the main screen.*

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Voice Interaction

WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on.
4. Press **Preferred Wake Word**.
5. Press a setting.

BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word followed by your command.



You can also press the button on the steering wheel to begin a voice interaction. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

General Examples

Command	Result
Start Over.	The system resets the current voice interaction.
Cancel.	The system ends the current voice interaction.
Next Page.	The system goes to the next page.
Previous Page.	The system goes to the previous page.
Help.	The system displays a list of available commands you can use on the current screen.

Entertainment Examples

Command	Result
Play The Beatles.	The system plays the selected music.
Show music by The Beatles.	The system shows the selected music.
Tune to FM 101.9.	The system tunes the radio to 101.9 FM.

Voice Interaction

Climate Examples

Command	Result
Set the temperature to low.	The system sets the temperature to the minimum.
Set the temperature to 22°C (72°F).	The system sets the temperature to 22°C (72°F).

Phone Examples

Command	Result
Call Henry.	The system calls Henry using your connected device.
Dial (phone number).	The system dials the selected phone number.
Send a text message to Henry.	The system begins a dictated text message.
Read my message from Henry.	The system reads you the most recent message from Henry.

Apps Examples

Command	Result
Mobile Apps.	The system prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on the system.
List Mobile Apps.	The system will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	The system will search and connect to compatible apps running on your mobile device.

Navigation Examples

Command	Result
Say the address that you're looking for, like 'The Queen's Walk, London'.	The system begins guided navigation to the address.
Where is ___	The system searches for the requested point of interest.
Show me directions to Oakwood Boulevard and Pelham Road.	The system shows directions to the selected intersection.
Cancel route.	The system ends guided navigation to the destination.

Alexa Built-In

WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Get Started**.
4. Sign in to your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
5. Once signed in, follow the on-screen prompts.
6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Sign Out**.

USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on or off.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

To change the contact sharing status:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Contact List**.

Alexa Built-In

4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

Note: *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Things to Try**.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.*

3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: *A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.*

4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.*

5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: *If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.*

PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Note: *Up to 12 devices can be stored.*

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Phone

Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

Note: *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call list	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Phone

Item	
End call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Handsfree off	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

IOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

Bluetooth®

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

3. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.

2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.

3. Press **Sources**.

4. Press **Bluetooth**.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

Apps

APP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: *Some apps can run through **Apple CarPlay** if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®**.

Note: *Some apps can run through **Android Auto** if it is enabled.*

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

5. Access the system applications.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: *Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when **Mobile Apps** are enabled.*

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Apps

Note: Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.

Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Disabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Disable**.

Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
4. Press **Connect to Apple CarPlay**.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

Switching Android Auto On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.

4.



Press this icon to switch Android Auto on or off.

Navigation

CONNECTED NAVIGATION

Your vehicle may be equipped with connected navigation. After the trial period, you need to sign up to continue the experience. For additional information, visit ford.com/connectedservices.

Note: *If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.*

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access Navigation by pressing the map on the left side of the home screen.

Note: *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update the Map data, you need to have a connected navigation subscription and your vehicle modem must be enabled. See **Connected Navigation** (page 437). See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 415).

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to <https://mapcreator.here.com/>.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

Note: *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press Search.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Press the Go! button to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen.
2. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location.

Note: *Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.*

3. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the pin.

Navigation

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press the Recents tile.
3. Select a destination from the list.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press Where To? at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

Note: *Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.*

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press and hold on a point of interest icon on the map.

Note: *Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.*

2. Press the **Go!** button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT



Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

TRAILER TOWING NAVIGATION

The system calculates the best route for trailer towing by avoiding dangerous road conditions based on the dimensions of your trailer.

Note: *This feature is only available if you properly attach the trailer to your vehicle.*

Navigation

Switching Trailer Towing Navigation On and Off

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Switch **Trailer-optimized Routing** on or off.

Entering Trailer Dimensions

1. Press the **Navigation** button on the feature bar.
2. Press the **Menu** button.
3. Press **Trailer Routing**.
4. Press **Towing Menu**.
5. Press **Add Trailer**.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen to enter the type and dimensions of the trailer into the system.

Geofencing - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WHAT IS GEOFENCING

Geofencing is capable of automatically modifying the vehicle settings to help reduce emissions, based on the current location of your vehicle when driving through a low emission zone.

HOW DOES GEOFENCING WORK

Using the GPS coordinates, geofencing detects that your vehicle approaches a low emission zone and notifies you about access conditions.

When your vehicle enters a low emission zone, it switches to electric-only mode or Eco selectable drive mode, and notifies you about it on the instrument cluster. While driving in the low emission zone, your vehicle uses electric-only mode as much as possible. When your vehicle exits the low emission zone, it switches back to the original drive mode and notifies you about it in the instrument cluster display.

You can override the feature by selecting a different drive mode while driving in a low emission zone.

Note: *If you override the feature, your vehicle stays in the selected drive mode, even after exiting the low emission zone.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 416). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

GEOFENCING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Geofencing uses the vehicle clock to define actual access conditions of a time restricted low emission zone. It is your responsibility to make sure the vehicle clock is correctly set.*

GEOFENCING LIMITATIONS

If one of the following selectable drive modes is active when entering a low emission zone, geofencing does not override it:

- Slippery.
- Tow Haul.

GEOFENCING INDICATORS

Geofencing Indicators

EV Now



Displays when your vehicle enters a low emission zone. When in this mode, your vehicle uses the high voltage battery only.

Geofencing - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

ECO Mode



Displays when your vehicle enters a low emission zone. When in this mode, your vehicle helps maximize fuel efficiency and increases driving range.

Vehicle acceleration, top speed and climate control system performance could be reduced in both modes to maximize the distance your vehicle could travel.

Geofencing Settings

Switching Drive Mode Change On and Off

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **EV Zone Mode**.
4. Switch **Drive Mode Change** on or off.

Note: *If you switch **Drive Mode Change** off, your vehicle will not change drive mode when entering or exiting low emission zones.*

Switching Cluster Notification On and Off

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **EV Zone Mode**.
4. Switch **Cluster Notification** on or off.

Note: *If you switch **Cluster Notification** off, your vehicle will not display notification pop-ups when approaching, entering or exiting low emission zones.*

Vehicle Software Updates

VEHICLE SOFTWARE UPDATES - VEHICLES WITH: DOUBLE LOCKING

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 415).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 444).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.

- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Enable double lock.
 - You can re-enable double lock with the key fob after the update completes.
- Arm the alarm.
 - The alarm automatically rearms after the update completes.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

VEHICLE SOFTWARE UPDATES - VEHICLES WITH: SINGLE LOCKING

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 415).

Vehicle Software Updates

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on to the top left of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 444).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Arm the alarm.
 - The alarm automatically rearms after the update completes.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Software Updates**.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Vehicle Software Updates

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we do not recommend switching Automatic Updates off.

Note: *Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.*

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Recurring Schedule**.
2. Select the days and time for updates.
3. Press **Save**.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: *The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.*

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.
2. Press **Update Now**.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.

You can perform multiple resets from this menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

AUTHORIZED DEALER DIRECTORY

Name	Telephone	Address	City
GİZERLER	(322) 346 80 80	Levent Mah. Eski Ceyhan Yolu Üzeri 5. Km No: 210 Yüreğir/Adana	Adana
OTOKOÇ ADANA	(322) 441 17 17	Mersin Yolu Üzeri 9. Km Sarı Hamzalı Köyü Mevkii Merkez/Adana	Adana
İNTERTEKS	(416) 227 24 01	Adıyaman Gölbaşı Karayolu Üzeri Küçük Sanayi Sitesi Karşısı Merkez/Adıyaman	Adıyaman
GLS GELİŞİM OTOMOTİV	(382) 245 44 14	Bahçesaray Mahallesi 135. Cadde No: 216 Aksaray	Aksaray
BAŞER	(312) 269 80 00	Ayaş Yolu Çatalkara Sokak No:199 Sincan/Ankara	Ankara
KARTAŞ	(312) 583 85 60	Tevfik İleri Mh. Özal Bulvarı No: 55 Pursaklar/Ankara	Ankara
OTOKOÇ ANKARA	(312) 207 47 00	Eskişehir Yolu 12. Km No:350 Ümitköy/Ankara	Ankara
TAN OTO	(312) 591 34 34	Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı No:252 Macunköy,Yenimahalle/Ankara	Ankara
BİLALLER	(242) 259 33 70	Sarısu Mah. 121. Sk. No:30/A-B Konyaaltı/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ALANYA	(242) 515 13 80	Çevreyolu Üzeri No: 1 Tosmur Beldesi Alanya/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ANTALYA	(242) 340 26 85	Altınova Sinan Mah. Havaalanı Yolu Üzeri Merkez/Antalya	Antalya
KAHYAOĞULLARI	(256) 633 10 01	Söke Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Kuşadası/Aydın	Aydın
ZAFER	(256) 219 40 00	Aydın-İzmir Karayolu 1.Km (Aymas Bitişiği) Merkez/Aydın	Aydın
AKOTO EDREMİT	(266) 374 06 65	İzmir Yolu Üzeri 2. Km. Ilıcalar Mevkii Edremit/Balikesir	Balikesir

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
AKOTO Merkez	(266) 283 00 10	İzmir Yolu 8. Km Osb Kavşağı Merkez/Balikesir	Balikesir
MUSLUBAŞLAR	(266) 721 21 21	600 Evler Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 95 Bandırma/Balikesir	Balikesir
OĞUZCAN	(488) 218 02 23	Gültepe Mahallesi Demokrasi Bulvarı No: 401 Merkez/Batman	Batman
OTOKOÇ BURSA	(224) 270 39 00	29 Ekim Mah. İzmir Yolu Cad. No:380/A Nilüfer/Bursa	Bursa
SÖNMEZ KOÇ	(224) 261 22 44	Yeni Yalova Yolu 9. Km Sönmez Asf. Karşısı Merkez/Bursa	Bursa
ARSLANLAR	(286) 263 06 25	İzmir Yolu 5. Km Merkez/Çanakkale	Çanakkale
EVLÜCE OTO	(364) 235 02 12	Ankara Asfaltı 7. Km Merkez/Çorum	Çorum
YARGÜL	(258) 371 23 79	Akçeşme Mevkii Mendere Bulvarı No: 161 Gümüşler/Denizli	Denizli
DİYARBAKIR OTO	(412) 255 04 45	Şanlıurfa Yolu Üzeri 4 Km Merkez/Diyarbakır	Diyarbakır
GÖRÜR	(380) 537 53 15	Taşköprü Köyü E-5 Mahallesi No: 55 Düzce	Düzce
TUZCULAR	(284) 763 11 23	Ford Plaza İstanbul Yolu 7. Km Merkez/Edirne	Edirne
ÇETİNKAYALAR	(424) 247 40 31	Malatya Yolu 8. Km Baskil Yol Kavşağı Merkez/Elazığ	Elazığ
CİNDİLLİ OTOMOTİV	(442) 242 00 13	Tortum Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Cindilli Ford Plaza Erzurum	Erzurum
OTOKOÇ ESKİŞEHİR	(222) 335 10 10	Şirintepe Mh. İsmet İnönü 2. Cad. No: 64 Tepebaşı Merkez/Eskişehir	Eskişehir
DOĞANLAR	(342) 323 23 13	Mücahitler Mahallesi Sani Konukoğlu Bulvarı No:28/A Şehitkamil/Gaziantep	Gaziantep

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OVALI ANTAKYA	(326) 221 61 65	İskenderun Yolu Üzeri 5. Km Antakya/Hatay	Hatay
OVALI İSKENDERUN	(326) 618 38 38	İsmet İnönü Mah.İbrahim Karaođlanođlu Cad.No: 38 Hatay/İskenderun	Hatay
SÜRKİT OTOM.	(476) 210 11 38	Söđütlü Mevkii Çevre Yolu Üzeri Ford Plaza Merkez/Iđdır	Iđdır
ATILGAN SANC-AKTEPE	(216) 498 98 00	Veysel Karani Mahallesi, Aşık Reyhani Caddesi No: 14 Sancaktepe/İstanbul	İstanbul
AYDOĐANLAR	(212) 665 84 84	Yenibosna Merkez Mah. Kavak Sokak Ser Plaza No: 3/1-2, Bodrum Kat Bahçelievler/İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ B.ÇEKMECE	(212) 863 84 10	Mimarsinan Merkez Mah.E-5 Londra Asfaltı No:57 B. Çekmece İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ MAHMUTBEY	(212) 454 40 00	Göztepe Mah. Rahim Sok. No: 2-4 Bağcılar/İstanbul	İstanbul
GÜRBAŞLAR	(216) 465 33 61	Göztepe Mah. Atatürk Cad. No:12 Migros karşısi A.Hisarı/İstanbul	İstanbul
KAR OTOMOTİV	(212) 612 49 49	Defterdar Mah. Fethi Çelebi Cad. No: 23/1 Eyüp/İstanbul	İstanbul
KELEŞLER	(212) 417 39 15	Uluyol Cad. No: 25/A Bayrampaşa/İstanbul	İstanbul
KENT OTOMOTİV	(212) 423 53 00	Saadetdere Mah. 68. Sok. No: 40 Esenyurt/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL İSTİNYE	(212) 229 95 55	İstinye Mah. Sarıyer Cad. No: 70/C Yeniköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL ATAŞEHİR	(216) 574 38 32	Kayışdađı Cd. No: 3 Flora Plaza Küçükbakkalköy, Ataşehir/İstanbul	İstanbul

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL TAŞDELEN	(216) 430 12 00	Çamlık Mah. Çobandere Mevkii Sırrı Çelik Bulvarı No: 9A/9B, Şile Otobanı 11. Km Taşdelen, Çekmeköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
TEPRETOĞULLARI	(216) 545 03 33	Acıbadem Mah Köftüncü Sokak No: 1/3 Kadıköy/ İstanbul	İstanbul
ARKAS İZMİR	(232) 399 34 34	Anadolu Cad. No: 687/C Karşıyaka/İzmir Karşıyaka/ İzmir	İzmir
ÇETAŞ İZMİR	(232) 478 07 07	Ankara Cad. Naldöken Mah. No: 319 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
İZKAR	(232) 254 38 00	Akçay Cad. No: 49 Gaziemir/ İzmir	İzmir
OTOKOÇ İZMİR	(232) 498 90 00	Kazım Dirik Mah. 296. Sokak No: 1 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
METİNLER	(352) 224 54 54	Konaklar Mevkii Sivas Cad. No: 244 Kayseri	Kayseri
ÜNAL	(352) 311 55 00	Anbar Mahallesi Osman Kavuncu Bulvarı No: 498 Anbar, Melikgazi/Kayseri	Kayseri
ÇANGAR	(392) 227 05 55	Soyak Evleri Mevkii, Küçükkaymaklı Mah. Şehit Mustafa Ruso Cad. Lefkoşe/ Kıbrıs	Kıbrıs
ACAMAR	(262) 606 10 10	Köşklü Çeşme Mah. İstanbul Cad. No:87 41400 Gebze/ Kocaeli	Kocaeli
ESOTO	(262) 335 43 15	Sanayi Mah. D-130 Yanyol Cad. No: 79 Merkez/Kocaeli	Kocaeli
OTOKOÇ KONYA	(332) 255 42 33	İstanbul Yolu Üzeri Sancak Mah. Büyükkırmak Sk. No:1 Selçuklu Merkez/Konya	Konya
ILICAK	(422) 444 59 55	1.OSB Mahallesi Havaalanı Yolu 2.Cadde No: 14/1 Yeşilyurt/MALATYA	Malatya

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ÇETAŞ MANİSA	(236) 233 84 00	Güzelyurt Mah. Menemen Cad. No:15/A Manisa	Manisa
ÇETAŞ SALIHLI	(236) 716 16 00	Ankara Asfaltı 3. km. Salihli/Manisa	Manisa
NAS OTO	(482) 312 04 44	Havaalanı Yanı 47100 Merkez/Mardin	Mardin
HELVACIOĞLU BODRUM	(252) 358 68 38	Açık Kirlar Mevkii Atatürk Bulvarı No: 289 Konacık, Bodrum/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU FETHİYE	(252) 646 57 77	Karaçulha Belediyesi Cumhuriyet Cad. No: 199 Fethiye/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU Merkez	(252) 212 80 00	Orhaniye Mah. Uğur Mumcu Bulvarı No: 17 Merkez/Muğla	Muğla
ALTAŞ	(452) 234 19 20	Cumhuriyet Mah. Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı No:102 Merkez/Ordu	Ordu
ATILGAN RİZE	(464) 226 01 85	Cumhuriyet Çay Fabrikası Karşısı Gündoğdu Rize	Rize
AKGÜN	(264) 276 72 10	Hanlıköy Mahallesi Eskişehir Caddesi No: 93/A Arifiye/Sakarya	Sakarya
OTOKOÇ SAMSUN	(362) 266 61 12	Samsun-Trabzon Karayolu 10. Km Kutlukent Tekkeköy/Samsun	Samsun
KURT	(346) 502 58 58	Yeşilyurt Mah. Sultaneşehir Blv. 14.6 Merkez/Sivas	Sivas
ŞANLIURFA OTO	(414) 316 62 27	Mardin Yolu 3.Km Jandarma Karşısı Merkez/Şanlıurfa	Şanlıurfa
DÖNÜŞÜM	(486) 616 76 16	Nusaybin Yolu Üzeri Cizre Çıkışı 8. Km Habur Tesisleri Yanı Nerme Mevkii Çavuşlu Köyü, Cizre/Şırnak	Şırnak
VOLKAN Çorlu	(282) 685 42 90	E-5 Karayolu Üzeri Önerler Mevkii Mücavir Mah. İstanbul Cad. 43/A, Çorlu/Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
VOLKAN Tekirdağ	(282) 293 38 82	Hürriyet Mah. Sami Efendi Sok. No:2 Süleymanpaşa/ Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
ORUÇLAR	(356) 214 41 43	Yeniyurt Mah. Vali Zekai Gümüşdiş Blv. No: 55/A Tokat	Tokat
TUNALAR	(462) 248 12 00	Tunalar Ford Plaza Yıldızlı/ Trabzon	Trabzon
AKKÖPRÜLÜ	(434) 217 17 17	Şabaniye Mah. İpekyolu 4. Km Merkez/Van	Van
ERDEĞER	(226) 351 73 50	Kılıç Köyü Şakşak Mevkii Çiftlikköy/Yalova	Yalova
AZİM OTO	(372) 323 98 40	Muammer Aksoy Cad. No: 38 Karadeniz Ereğli/Zonguldak	Zonguldak

Service Intervals - Turkey

SERVICE INTERVALS

Model	Service Interval (Whichever Occurs First)	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• All passenger cars.• Ranger• Tourneo Connect.• Tourneo Courier.• Transit Connect.• Transit Courier.	1 year	15,000 km (9,500 mi)
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Tourneo Custom.• Transit.• Transit Custom.	1 year	20,000 km (12,500 mi)

Note: *Service intervals may vary depending on engine options. For information about the service interval details of your vehicle, please refer to the local Ford website.*

ROLLOVER WARNING



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit [http://
corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html](http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html).

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

Customer Information

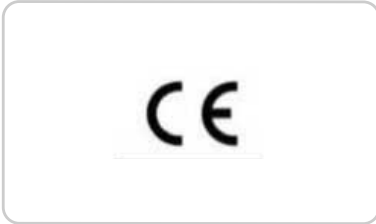
To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

ANTENNAS

European Union EU



Ukraine



United Kingdom



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Short Range Radar (SRR)	Continental	SRR3-B

Customer Information

Argentina



RAMATEL
C-17954

Belarus



Brazil



Canada

Short Range Radar Sensor SRR3-B
IC ID: 4135A-SRR3B

Customer Information

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure information:

This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and the body of any persons, user or bystander.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 8 in (20 cm) de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 240/MCPT/SG/16
Date d'agrément : 23/05/2016

European Union EU

CE

Customer Information

Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: 3R8-8M-7DF-231

Malaysia



Israel

HIDF16000009

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסוג מסדר התקשורת 51-63484
2. תח א'סור לכצע פעולות בככשיר שיש בתן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של הככשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור מסדר התקשורת, בעל החשב להפרצת אלחוטיות.

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0727/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 10/12/2019

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved
by Jamaica: SMA - SRR3-B.

Mexico

IFETEL: RLVCSR15-0904

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes
dos condiciones:

- (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
- (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Customer Information

Moldova



Russia



Serbia



N011 18

Pakistan



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Paraguay



Customer Information

South Africa

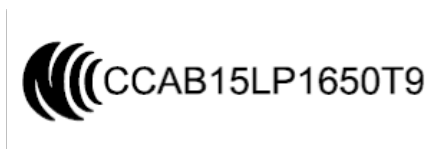


South Korea



MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3B

Taiwan



警語

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Customer Information

Ukraine



справжнім fIDC. Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH заявляє, що тип радіообладнання SRR3 - В відповідає технічному регламенту радіообладнання ;

повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою :

<http://continental.automotive-approvals.com/>

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER62934

DEALER No:
DA40068

United Kingdom



United States of America

FCC ID: OAYSRR3B

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION TO USERS

Customer Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam



Zambia



BODY CONTROL MODULE

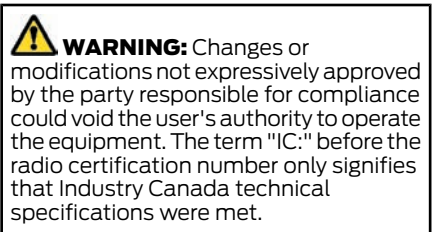
Argentina



Brazil



Canada and United States of America



FCC ID: LXPP004

IC: 2298A-P004

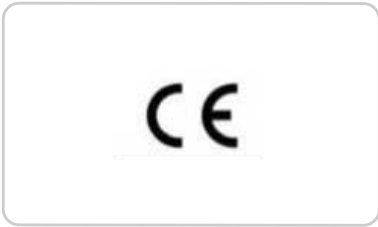
Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X4D

European Union EU



Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסוג מסדד התקשורת: 51-72602
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלקטרוניות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור מסדד התקשורת, כשל החשש להפרעות אלקטרוניות.

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-113

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA – P004R.

Customer Information

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA – P004.

Moldova



This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA - P005

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0801/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0768/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 11/03/2020

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24200 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 27/05/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 23513 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 24/03/2020

Customer Information

Paraguay



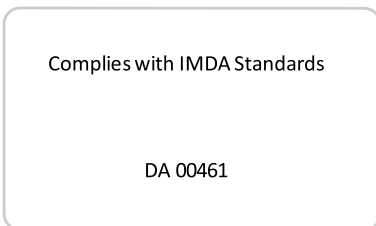
2020-07-I-0405

2021-01-0037

Serbia



Singapore



South Africa

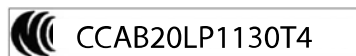


South Korea



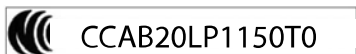
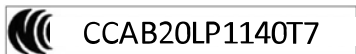
R-R-175-P005

Taiwan, China

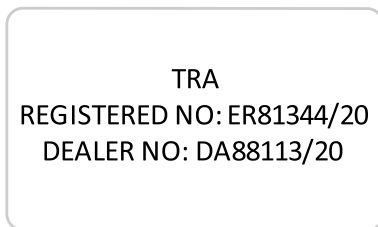


Customer Information

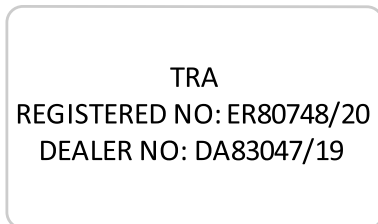
United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



Ukraine



Customer Information

TRA
REGISTERED NO: ER81343/20
DEALER NO: DA88113/20

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-24101

Zambia



CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-22290

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

Argentina

CNC: H-16366

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-16355

Customer Information

Brazil



NCA APPROVED: 2R9-1H-7E0-01A

Jamaica



This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931426



This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931423

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 289/MCPT/SC/116
Date d'agrément : 02/07/2016

This product has been Type Approved
by Jamaica: SMA – A2C97102000

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 2R9-8M-7E0-x94

**This product has been Type Approved
by Jamaica: SMA – A2C93142100**

Customer Information

Moldova

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA – N5F-A08TAA.



Jordan

Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2016/142
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 12433 ANRT 2016
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2016

Malaysia



FI7000176

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0323/ARE/2016
Date d'agrément : 07/03/2016

Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority



Approved by PTA 2016

Customer Information

Paraguay



NR: 2016-9-I-000223
NR: 2016-9-I-000222
NR: 2016-9-I-000220
NR: 2018-07-I-000317

Serbia



South Africa



South Korea



MSIP-CRM-TAL-A2C97102000

Taiwan, China

Singapore


Complies with IMDA Standards




DA 00461

Customer Information


Ukraine

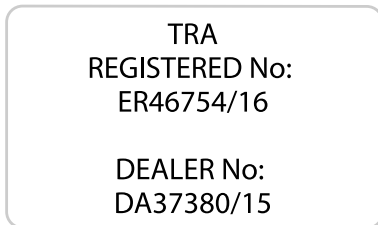
 CCAB16LP284DT9



 CCAB14LP563AT4

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

 CCAB14LP5630T2



Vietnam



Customer Information

Zambia



SYNC

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
SYNC	Ford	SYNC-G4 SYNC-G4L

Argentina



Customer Information

Brazil



08657-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

European Union EU



Ghana

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019
Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Customer Information

Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4L

Malaysia

Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: 81116/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.

HIDF16000009

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Customer Information

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

Moldova



Pakistan



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

Paraguay



2020-03-I-00192

2020-03-I-00193

Customer Information

Serbia



Singapore



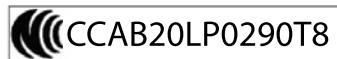
South Korea



South Africa



Taiwan



Customer Information

Ukraine

 CCAB20LP0300T1



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

 <p>ER74903/19 United Arab Emirates</p>	
--	---

 <p>ER74902/19 United Arab Emirates</p>	
---	--

Customer Information

United Kingdom



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

Zambia



TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Telematics Control Unit	Ford	FNV3-B6

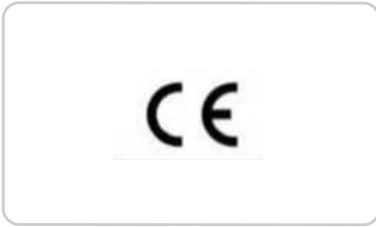
Customer Information

China

CMIIT ID: 2023CJ1792

HIDF16000009

European Union EU



Mexico



Malaysia



Paraguay



Customer Information

NR: 2023-01-I-0047

Serbia



South Africa



South Korea



R-C-FDM-FNV3B6ROW

Taiwan



CCA235G0042T9

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER19896/23


DEALER No:

DA83047/19

United Kingdom



United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-14H317-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H317NA1

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CNC ID: H-28035

Brazil



TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS

Argentina

13309-22-08001



European Union EU



The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type BG2BP4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities

Customer Information

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסעם משרד התקשורת: 51-86230
2. תל אישור לבצע פעולות במשך שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי חובנה, החלפת אנטנה סקורית או חוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרות אלחוטיות.

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - BG2BP4.

Malaysia



HIDF16000009

Mexico

IFT: RLVSCBG22-2502

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:
MRO0034968ANRT2022

Date d'agrément: 21/12/2022

Paraguay

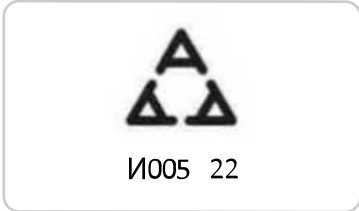


Customer Information

NR: 2022-05-I-0000331

South Korea

Serbia



MSIP-R-C-SRD-BG2BP4

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA 00461

Taiwan



CCAB22LP0730T0

Thailand

South Africa



- (1) เครื่องใช้หรือยานพาหนะและอุปกรณ์ชิ้นนี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กทท.
- (2) เครื่องใช้หรือยานพาหนะและอุปกรณ์ชิ้นนี้ผ่านการทดสอบโดยห้องปฏิบัติการมาตรฐานวิศวกรรมยานยนต์ของประเทศไทยเรียบร้อยแล้ว เพื่อให้สามารถใช้งานได้ภายใต้เงื่อนไขการใช้งานที่ระบุไว้

Customer Information

Ukraine



Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER10488/22


DEALER No:

DA37380/15

United Kingdom



United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXBG2BP4

IC: 2546A-BG2BP4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

Device	Supplier	Type Designation
Wireless Charger (WCM)	LG/BH EVS	WCFDM00N2A1 WCFDM00N2A3 WCFDM00N2A5

Customer Information

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26491

Brazil

 **ANATEL**
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações
12804-21-14208

Democratic Republic of Congo

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26492

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation : HER-0054/Juin/2021

Date d'homologation : 02/06/2021

European Union

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26493



Customer Information

Ghana

Model: WCFDM00N2A5
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR



Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1
Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Model: WCFDM00N2A3
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Israel

1. מספר אישור החאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80014
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור החאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80015
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור החאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80013
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בו כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Customer Information

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA - WCFDM00N2A.

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0934/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

Malaysia



AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0933/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

HIDF16000009

Moldova

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0935/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021



Customer Information

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027924ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Nu méro d'agrément : MR 00027925ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Nu méro d'agrément : MR 00027923ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

Paraguay



NR: 2021-04-I-0202

NR: 2021-04-I-0203

NR: 2021-04-I-0204

Russia



Serbia



V005 21

Customer Information

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0099

South Africa



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

South Korea



R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1

Taiwan

 **CCAB21LP050AT3**

 **CCAB21LP0500T1**

 **CCAB21LP050BT5**

Customer Information

品名 (Product name): 無線充電座

型號 (Type Designation): WCFDM00N2A1, WCFDM00N2A3, WCFDM00N2A5 產地 (Origin): 馬來西亞

額定電壓 (Input rating): 12V

製造日期 (Approval date): 2021.04.21



R43208
Rolls

申請廠商名稱 (Approval name): 福特六和汽車股份有限公司

申請廠商地址 (Approval address): 桃園市中壢區中華路一段705號

Ukraine



United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



Customer Information

TDR 

ER00421/21
United Arab Emirates



TDR 

ER00421/21
United Arab Emirates



United States and Canada

FCC ID: BEJWC FDM00N2A

IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

Customer Information

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

Zambia



REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Customer Information

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Customer Information

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What is eCall** (page 46).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 46).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 47).

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
 - Vehicle Identification Number.
 - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
 - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
 - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.

Customer Information

- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
 - Any additional data (if applicable): See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 23).
- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.
- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.
- 2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
- 2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Customer Information

- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.
- (1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).
 - (2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).
 - (3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.
 - 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

Customer Information

- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

Customer Information

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:**

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:**

You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.

- **Internet-Based Services**

Components: The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional

Customer Information

charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

Customer Information

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Customer Information

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service; (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Customer Information

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Customer Information

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Customer Information

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Customer Information

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Customer Information

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Customer Information

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Customer Information

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Customer Information

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved!"

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory Notice

Argentina IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”

Ecuador “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011”
“source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”

Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Customer Information

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Customer Information

Austria	“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	“© EuroGeographics”
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”
Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”
Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”
Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”

Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).

Customer Information

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

Customer Information

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Information

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Customer Information

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

Customer Information

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

Customer Information

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelomatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelomatics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelomatics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the **“Suppliers”**)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Customer Information

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Index

1

12V Battery.....	366
12V Battery Precautions.....	366
Battery Management System	
Limitations.....	367
Changing the 12V Battery.....	367
Charging the 12V Battery.....	369
How Does the Battery Management	
System Work.....	366
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V	
Battery.....	369
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....	369
What Is the Battery Management	
System.....	366
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	369
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	370
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	369
180 Degree Camera.....	244
180 Degree Camera Precautions.....	244

3

360 Degree Camera.....	245
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	246
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	245
360 Degree Camera Limitations.....	245
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	245
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	246

A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	122
About This Publication.....	17
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	215
Accessing Navigation.....	437
Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position.....	153
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	117
AC Charging.....	195
Connecting the Charger.....	195
Stopping Charging.....	197
Active Park Assist.....	248
Active Park Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	250
Active Park Assist Precautions.....	248
Active Park Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	250
Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	250
Active Park Assist – Information	
Messages.....	250
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	253
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	269
Lane Centering.....	262
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	265
Predictive Speed Assist.....	266
Predictive Speed Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	269
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation – Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control.....	256
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation – Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	256
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	262
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Limitations.....	254
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Precautions.....	253
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	269
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information	
Messages.....	269
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	89
How Does Adaptive Front Lighting	
Work.....	89
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the	
Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road.....	91
Adaptive Front Lighting –	
Troubleshooting.....	92
Adaptive Front Lighting – Information	
Messages.....	92
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles	
With: Memory Function.....	99
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles	
Without: Memory Function.....	99
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	371
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting	
Brightness.....	93
Adjusting the Map.....	437
Changing the Format of the Map.....	437
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	437

Index

Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	39
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	38
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	421
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	74
Adjusting the Volume.....	420
Aid Mode.....	282
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	282
What Is Aid Mode.....	282
Airbag Precautions.....	42
Airbags.....	41
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	44
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	44
Airbags – Audible Warnings.....	44
Airbags – Warning Lamps.....	44
Air Conditioning See: Climate Control.....	122
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	409
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	409
Alert and Aid Mode.....	283
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	283
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	283
Alexa Built-In.....	428
Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	428
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	428
All-Wheel Drive.....	214
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	214
All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	214
All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	214
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	214
All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages.....	214
Ambient Lighting.....	94
Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	94
Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off.....	94
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	215
Anti-Lock Braking System Indicators.....	215
Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....	215
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	70
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	71
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	71
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work.....	70
What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	70
What Are the Interior Sensors.....	70
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	70
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	71
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	71
Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	71
Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	72
What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	71
What Is Ask on Exit.....	72
Appendices.....	522
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....	218
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency.....	219
Applying the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....	218
App Precautions.....	435
App Requirements.....	435
Apps.....	435
Audio System.....	420
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	422
FM Radio.....	421
Audio System Precautions.....	420
Authorized Dealer Directory.....	446
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	98
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations.....	98
What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	98
Auto Hold.....	227
Auto Hold Indicators.....	228
Autolamps.....	82
Autolamp Settings.....	82
What Are Autolamps.....	82
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Automatic Transmission.....	219
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake - Manual Transmission.....	219
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	335
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	336
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	336
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	335

Index

Automatic Emergency Braking.....	302
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off.....	302
What Is Automatic Emergency Braking.....	302
Automatic Engine Stop.....	152
How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work.....	153
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	153
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off.....	153
What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	152
Automatic High Beam Control.....	84
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....	85
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....	85
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....	84
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....	85
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....	84
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	85
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	85
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	86
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	86
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	211
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations.....	211
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work.....	211
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings.....	210
Automatic Transmission.....	208
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	211
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	208
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	212
Grade Assist - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	212
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	210
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	411
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	410
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators.....	209
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	208
Drive (D).....	209
Low (L).....	209
Neutral (N).....	208
Park (P).....	208
Reverse (R).....	208
Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	208
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	212
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	212
Auto Mode.....	124
Auto Mode Indicators.....	124
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	124
Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	125
Autorelock.....	55
How Does Autorelock Work.....	55
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	166
Auto-Start-Stop.....	165
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	166
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	166
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	165
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	166
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	167
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	166
Autounlock.....	54
Autounlock Requirements.....	54
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	54
What Is Autounlock.....	54
Autowipers.....	76
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor.....	76
Autowipers Settings.....	76
What Are Autowipers.....	76

Index

AWD	
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	214
B	
Battery Charge.....	115
Beginning a Voice Interaction.....	426
Blind Spot Assist.....	284
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	285
Blind Spot Assist – Information Messages.....	286
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	284
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	284
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	284
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	286
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators.....	287
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage – Information Messages.....	288
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	286
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work.....	286
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	286
Blind Spot Information System.....	290
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	293
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	292
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	293
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	290
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	290
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Automatic Transmission.....	291
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Manual Transmission.....	291
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	293
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	294
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps.....	293
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	292
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work.....	292
Selecting a Trailer.....	293
Setting a Trailer Length.....	293
Switching Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage On and Off.....	292
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....	292
Bluetooth®.....	434
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	350
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	350
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	351
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	350
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	354
Booster Seats.....	34
Brake Coach.....	115
Brake Fluid Specification.....	411
Brake Over Accelerator.....	215
Brake Precautions.....	215
Brakes.....	215
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	215
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	216
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	216
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	217
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	216
Breaking-In.....	327
C	
Canceling the Set Speed.....	252
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....	277
Canceling the Set Speed Limit - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....	276
Capacities and Specifications.....	400
Catalytic Converter.....	185
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	185

Index

Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	185
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	185
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	185
Center Display Limitations.....	424
Center Display Overview.....	424
Center Display Precautions.....	424
Changing a Flat Tire.....	394
Changing a Road Wheel.....	394
Changing the Backup Battery.....	48
Changing the Language.....	116
Changing the Measurement Unit.....	116
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	49
Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	276
Changing the Temperature Unit.....	116
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	116
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	418
Charge Port Indicators.....	194
Charging a Device.....	143
Charging a Wireless Device.....	147
Charging Equipment.....	189
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols.....	203
Charging Your Vehicle.....	189
AC Charging.....	195
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	204
Charging Your Vehicle Precautions.....	189
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	204
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	205
Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	204
Checking Local Hazard Information Status.....	275
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	215
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level.....	206
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	382
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	77
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	30
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	30
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	30
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	30
Child Restraints.....	30
Child Restraint Position Information.....	31
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	33
Installing Child Restraints.....	34
Child Safety.....	29
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	30
Child Restraints.....	31
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....	36
Child Safety Lock Indicator.....	36
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....	36
Child Safety Locks – Information Messages.....	36
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks.....	35
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks.....	35
Child Safety Precautions.....	29
Cleaning the Exterior.....	374
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	375
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	374
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	374
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	375
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	375
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	374
Cleaning the Underbody.....	375
Cleaning Wheels.....	374
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	374
Cleaning the Interior.....	376
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	377
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	376
Cleaning Fabric.....	376
Cleaning Leather.....	376
Cleaning Moonroof Tracks.....	378
Cleaning Plastic.....	376
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	377
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	377
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	376
Cleaning Vinyl.....	377
Climate Control.....	122
Auto Mode.....	124
Climate Control Hints.....	125

Index

Closing the Liftgate.....	61	Cooling System Capacity and Specification - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV).....	404
Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	67	Cooling System Capacity and Specification - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	405
Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	65	Crash and Breakdown Information.....	331
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	61	Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	335
Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	66	Fail-Safe Cooling.....	337
Clutch Fluid Specification.....	206	Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	332
Cold Weather Precautions.....	327	Post-Crash Alert System.....	335
Connected Navigation.....	437	Recovery Towing.....	336
Connected Vehicle.....	415	Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	418
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	416	Cross Traffic Alert.....	295
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	415	Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	297
Connected Vehicle Data.....	22	Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	296
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	415	Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	297
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	415	Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	296
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	416	Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	295
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	416	Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	297
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	416	Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	297
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	434	Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	296
Connecting a Trailer.....	323	Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	297
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball.....	318	What Is Cross Traffic Alert With Trailer Coverage.....	296
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Retractable Tow Ball.....	320	Cruise Control.....	251
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	415	Cruise Control Indicators.....	252
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	415	Cup Holders.....	148
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	415	Cup Holder Precautions.....	148
What Is the Modem.....	415	Customer Information.....	453
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	415	Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	454
Connecting Your Phone.....	430	Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display.....	113
Coolant.....	362		
Adding Coolant.....	363	D	
Changing the Coolant.....	364	Data Privacy.....	20
Checking the Coolant Level.....	362	Declaration of Conformity.....	453
Coolant – Information Messages.....	365	Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	422
Coolant Precautions.....	362	Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....	422
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	365		
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	364		
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	404		

Index

Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....	422
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	422
Directing the Flow of Air.....	123
Distance Indication.....	301
Distance Indication Indicator.....	301
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....	301
What Is Distance Indication.....	301
Door Lock Indicators.....	55
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	54
How Does the Door Lock Switch Inhibitor Work.....	54
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	55
Doors and Locks.....	52
Autolock.....	55
Autolock.....	54
Door Lock Switch Inhibitor.....	54
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	55
Mislock.....	55
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	53
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	52
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	55
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions.....	57
Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....	56
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	55
Drive Mode Control.....	270
Drive Modes.....	271
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes.....	272
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes – Troubleshooting.....	273
Drive Modes.....	271
Eco.....	271
Normal.....	271
Slippery.....	271
Sport.....	271
Trail.....	271
Driver Alert.....	307
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	308
Driver Alert Indicators.....	308
Driver Alert Precautions.....	307
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	308
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	308
Driving Economically.....	327
Driving Hints.....	327
Driving in Special Conditions.....	328
Driving in Special Conditions.....	328
Driving In Sand.....	329
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	328
Driving Through Mud and Water.....	328
Driving on Snow and Ice.....	327
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	329
Drowsiness Monitor	
See: Driver Alert.....	307

E	
Easy Entry and Exit.....	60
eCall.....	46
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	48
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	48
eCall – Information Messages.....	48
eCall User Information.....	493
Eco Coach.....	274
Electric Economy.....	114
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	219
Electric Parking Brake.....	218
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	220
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	220
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	220
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	220
Electric Power Steering.....	232
Electric Power Steering Adaptive Steering.....	232
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	232
How Does Electric Power Steering Work.....	232
Emergency Call Indicators.....	47
Emergency Call Limitations.....	46
Emergency Call Requirements.....	46
Emergency Call System Data.....	23
Emergency Equipment.....	343
Emergency Towing.....	339

Index

Enabling Apps on an Android Device.....	435
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	435
Enabling Local Hazard Information.....	275
Enabling Remote Start.....	120
End User License Agreement.....	496
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	108
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	403
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	403
Engine Oil.....	360
Adding Engine Oil.....	361
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	360
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	360
Engine Oil – Information Messages.....	362
Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	361
Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	361
Engine Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	400
Engine Specifications - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	401
Entering a Parking Space.....	249
Environment.....	24
Evasive Steering Assist.....	302
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	302
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	302
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	302
EV Coach.....	114
Event Data.....	21
Exiting a Parking Space.....	249
Exterior Bulbs.....	372
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	372
Exterior Lamps.....	82
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	84
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	83
Switching the Parking Lamps On and Off.....	82
Using the Front Fog Lamps.....	83
Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....	83
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	82
Exterior Lighting Control.....	80
Exterior Lighting.....	80
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	89
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	92
Autolamps.....	82
Automatic High Beam Control.....	84
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	86
Exterior Lamps.....	82
Glare Free High Beam Control.....	86
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	89
Headlamps.....	80
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	81
Exterior Mirrors.....	99
Exterior Overview.....	28
F	
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	337
Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated.....	338
Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators.....	338
How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work.....	337
What Is Fail-Safe Cooling.....	337
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	37
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	394
Floor Mats.....	329
FM Radio.....	421
FM Radio Limitations.....	421
Selecting an FM Radio Station.....	421
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	100
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	100
Forward Collision Warning.....	301
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward Collision Warning.....	301
What is Forward Collision Warning.....	301
Front Parking Aid.....	236
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	237
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	237
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	237

Index

What is the Front Parking Aid.....	236
Front Seat Precautions.....	128
Front Seats.....	128
Heated Seats.....	134
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 8-Way Manual Seat.....	129
Power Seats.....	131
Fuel and Refueling.....	171
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	183
Fuel Quality.....	171
Refueling.....	174
Running Out of Fuel.....	173
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	171
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	183
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	183
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	183
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	181
Fuel Consumption Figures - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV).....	183
Fuel Consumption Figures - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	182
Fuel Consumption Regulations.....	181
Fuel Economy Display - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	114
Fuel Economy Display - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	113
Fuel Gauge.....	107
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	107
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	107
What Is Distance to Empty.....	107
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	107
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	107
Fuel Quality.....	171
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	171
Switching Between E85 and Gasoline.....	172
Fuel Tank Capacity - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	406
Fuel Tank Capacity - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	179
Fuel Tank Capacity - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV), Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	180
Fuel Tank Capacity - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV).....	407
Fuel Tank Capacity - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	408
Fuse Precautions.....	344
Fuses.....	344
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	350
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	353
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	344
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	353
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	353

G

Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	186
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	186
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions.....	186
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements.....	186
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	186
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	187
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	186
Geofencing.....	440
Geofencing Indicators.....	440
Geofencing Limitations.....	440
Geofencing Precautions.....	440
Glare Free High Beam Control.....	86
Glare Free High Beam Control Indicators.....	88
Glare Free High Beam Control Limitations.....	88
Glare Free High Beam Control Precautions.....	87
Glare Free High Beam Control Requirements.....	87
How Does Glare Free High Beam Control Work.....	86
Overriding Glare Free High Beam Control.....	88

Index

Switching Glare Free High Beam Control On and Off.....	88
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	89
Glare Free High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	89
Glasses Holder.....	148
Locating the Glasses Holder.....	148
Global Opening and Closing.....	95
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	96
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	96
Using Global Closing.....	96
Using Global Opening.....	96
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....	95
Grade Assist - 1-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	212
How Does Grade Assist Work.....	212
H	
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	371
Headlamps.....	80
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	80
Headlamp Indicators.....	81
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	80
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	80
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	81
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	81
Head Up Display.....	118
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....	119
Head Up Display Indicators.....	119
Head Up Display Settings.....	118
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....	119
Head Up Display – Information Messages.....	119
Heated Seats.....	134
Heated Seat Precautions.....	134
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	134
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	122
High Voltage Battery.....	188
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	188
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	331
Hill Start Assist.....	226
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	226
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	226
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	226
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	226
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	354
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	253
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	253
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work.....	157
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work.....	214
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	227
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	290
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	295
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	307
How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work.....	60
How Does eCall Work.....	46
How Does Eco Coach Work.....	274
How Does Geofencing Work.....	440
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	226
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work.....	274
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	299
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	299
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	298
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....	222
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work.....	305
How Does Stability Control Work.....	231

Index

How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work.....	244
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	245
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work.....	186
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work.....	278
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	281
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	138
How Does the Speed Limiter Work.....	276
How Does Traction Control Work.....	229
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work.....	309
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work.....	312
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	41
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	41
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	42
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics.....	157
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators.....	157
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	157
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	158
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	159
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	161
Power Flow.....	162
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	158
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Frequently Asked Questions.....	158
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Information Messages.....	158
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Warning Lamps.....	158
Identifying Fuse Types.....	352
Inflating the Tires.....	382
Information On Demand Screen.....	425
Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	384
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover.....	316
Instrument Cluster Display.....	112
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu.....	112
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	110
Instrument Cluster.....	104
Fuel Gauge.....	107
Instrument Cluster Overview - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	104
Instrument Cluster Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV).....	105
Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	106
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	108
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	280
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	280
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	278
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	280
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	278
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	280
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions.....	280
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	277
Interior Air Quality.....	127
Refreshing the Interior Air.....	127
Interior Bulbs.....	373
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	373
Interior Lamp Function.....	93
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	93
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	93
Interior Lighting.....	93
Ambient Lighting.....	94
Interior Lamp Function.....	93
Interior Mirror.....	98
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	98
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	98
Interior Overview - LHD.....	25

Index

Interior Overview - RHD.....	26
Introduction.....	17

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	332
Jump Starting Precautions.....	332
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	332
Preparing the Vehicle.....	332

K

Keyless Entry.....	58
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	59
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	58
Keyless Entry Settings.....	58
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	59
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	59
Keys and Remote Controls.....	49
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	51
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	51
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	51

L

Lane Centering.....	262
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	262
Lane Centering Alerts.....	264
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	264
Lane Centering Indicators.....	265
Lane Centering Limitations.....	263
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	265
Lane Centering Precautions.....	263
Lane Centering Requirements.....	263
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	264
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	265
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	265
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	283
Lane Keeping System.....	281
Aid Mode.....	282
Alert and Aid Mode.....	283

Blind Spot Assist.....	284
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	286
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	289
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	281
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	281
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	282
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	289
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	289
Liftgate.....	61
Closing the Liftgate.....	61
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	68
Opening the Liftgate.....	61
Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....	68
Liftgate Precautions.....	61
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	68
Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions.....	69
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	68
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	68
Load Carrying.....	314
Roof Rack.....	314
Load Carrying Precautions.....	314
Loading Your Trailer.....	324
Local Hazard Information Indicators.....	275
Local Hazard Information.....	275
Local Hazard Information Precautions.....	275
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	245
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	291
Locating the Cabin Air Filter.....	127
Locating the Charge Port.....	193
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	296
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	172
Locating the Memory Function Buttons.....	141
Locating the Power Outlets.....	145
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	300

Index

Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	300
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	241
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	386
Locating the USB Ports.....	143
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	146
Locating Your Vehicle.....	49
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	97
Locking the Steering Wheel.....	74
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	316
Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	317
Luggage Compartment Anchor Point Precautions.....	316
Luggage Compartment.....	316
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points.....	316
M	
Maintenance.....	354
12V Battery.....	366
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	369
Coolant.....	362
Engine Oil.....	360
Exterior Bulbs.....	372
Interior Bulbs.....	373
Maintenance Precautions.....	354
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	432
Manually Making an Emergency Call.....	46
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	219
Manual Seats.....	135
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	135
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	136
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	135
Removing the Head Restraint.....	135
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	136
Manual Seats - Vehicles With: 8-Way Manual Seat.....	129
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	129
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	130
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	130
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	130
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	129
Removing the Head Restraint.....	129
Manual Transmission.....	206
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	207
Manual Transmission Precautions.....	206
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators.....	206
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	207
Manual Transmission – Frequently Asked Questions.....	207
Memory Function.....	141
Memory Function Precautions.....	141
Mislock.....	55
Mislock Limitations.....	55
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	55
What Is Mislock.....	55
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	492
Mobile Device Data.....	22
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	103
Overriding Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	103
What Is Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	103
Moonroof.....	102
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	103
Muting the Audio.....	421
N	
Navigation Map Updates.....	437
Navigation.....	437
Adjusting the Map.....	437
Route Guidance.....	438
Setting a Destination.....	437
Waypoints.....	438
O	
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	354
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	102
Opening and Closing the Sunshade.....	102

Index

Opening and Closing the Windows.....	95
Opening the Liftgate.....	61
Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	64
Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	63
Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	61
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	61
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	53
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	53
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	52
Double Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	53
Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	52
Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	53
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	52
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	52
OTA	
See: Software Update Settings.....	443
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	442
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	442
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	223
Overriding the Set Speed.....	262
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	443
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	443
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	442
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	442
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	442
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	442

P

Parking Aid Indicators.....	239
Parking Aid Precautions.....	235
Parking Aids.....	235
Front Parking Aid.....	236
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	239
Rear Parking Aid.....	236
Side Parking Aid.....	237
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	239
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	239
Passenger Airbag Indicators.....	43
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	70
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....	70
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	70
Pedestrian Alert System.....	45
Performing a System Reset.....	445
Personalized Settings.....	116
Phone Menu.....	430
Phone.....	430
Phone Precautions.....	430
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	434
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	143
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source.....	420
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes.....	272
Auto EV.....	272
EV Later.....	272
EV Now.....	272
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes – Troubleshooting.....	273
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes – Information Messages.....	273
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	159
How Does a Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work.....	159
How Does Low Engine Use Mode Work.....	160
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics.....	159
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators.....	160

Index

What Is a Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....	159
What Is Low Engine Use Mode.....	160
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	161
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Information Messages.....	161
Post-Collision Braking.....	335
Post-Crash Alert System.....	335
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....	335
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	335
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....	335
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	335
Power Flow.....	162
How Does Power Flow Work.....	162
What is Power Flow.....	162
Power Gauge.....	106
Power Outlet.....	145
Power Outlet Precautions.....	145
Power Seats.....	131
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	131
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	134
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	133
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	132
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	133
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	132
Removing the Head Restraint.....	131
Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	443
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	442
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	442
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	300
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	299
Pre-Collision Assist.....	298
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	302
Distance Indication.....	301
Evasive Steering Assist.....	302
Forward Collision Warning.....	301
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	303
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	303
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	303
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....	303
Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold Weather Driving.....	327
Predictive Speed Assist.....	266
How Does Predictive Speed Assist Work.....	266
Predictive Speed Assist Alerts.....	268
Predictive Speed Assist Indicators.....	268
Predictive Speed Assist Limitations.....	267
Predictive Speed Assist Precautions.....	266
Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off.....	267
Predictive Speed Assist – Troubleshooting.....	269
Predictive Speed Assist – Information Messages.....	269
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....	379
Programming the Remote Control.....	51
Protecting the Environment.....	24
Puncture	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	394
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	149
R	
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	454
Antennas.....	454
Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	454
Body Control Module.....	461
Keys and Remote Controls.....	466
SYNC.....	471
Telematics Control Unit.....	477
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors.....	480
Wireless Accessory Charging Module.....	483
REACH.....	453
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	412

Index

Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	140
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....	139
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	138
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	138
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	138
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings.....	139
Rear Parking Aid.....	236
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....	236
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	236
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	236
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	236
Rear Seat Precautions.....	135
Rear Seats.....	135
Heated Seats.....	136
Manual Seats.....	135
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	241
Rear View Camera Limitations.....	241
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	241
Rear View Camera.....	241
Rear View Camera Settings.....	242
Rear View Camera Settings.....	242
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off.....	243
Switching Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicator On and Off.....	243
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out.....	242
Rebooting the Center Display.....	425
Recalling a Preset Position.....	141
Recovery Towing.....	336
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	336
Accessing the Rear Towing Point.....	336
Installing the Towing Eye.....	337
Locating the Towing Eye.....	337
Refreshing the Interior Air.....	127
Automatically Refreshing the Interior Air.....	127
Refueling.....	174
Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door.....	177
Refueling System Overview.....	174
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	174
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	220
Remote Control Limitations.....	49
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle.....	120
Remote Start Limitations.....	120
Remote Start Precautions.....	120
Remote Start.....	120
Remote Start Settings.....	120
Removing the Key Blade.....	49
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage.....	380
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	378
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	491
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	51
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	127
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	77
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	78
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....	54
Resetting Driver Alert.....	307
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	117
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	392
Restarting the Engine.....	165
Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	277
Resuming the Set Speed.....	252
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	223
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	222
Reverse Brake Assist.....	222
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	224
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting.....	224
Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	225
Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages.....	224
Reverse Wipe.....	77
Reverse Wipe Settings.....	77
What Is Reverse Wipe.....	77
Rollover Warning.....	453
Roof Rack.....	314
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	315
Roof Rack Precautions.....	314

Index

Route Guidance.....	438
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt	
Volume.....	438
Canceling Route Guidance.....	438
Repeating an Instruction.....	438
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	327
Running Out of Fuel.....	173
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel	
Container.....	173
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	173
S	
Saving a Preset Position.....	141
Scrolling Through Menu Items.....	421
Seatbelt Precautions.....	37
Seatbelt Reminder.....	39
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	40
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	40
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	39
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and	
Off.....	40
Seatbelts.....	37
Seatbelt Reminder.....	39
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	40
Seatbelts – Troubleshooting.....	40
Seatbelts – Information Messages.....	40
Security.....	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	70
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	71
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	70
Security – Troubleshooting.....	72
Security – Troubleshooting.....	72
Security – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	73
Security – Information Messages.....	72
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	271
Selecting a Menu Item.....	421
Selecting the Audio Source.....	420
Service Data.....	21
Service Intervals.....	452
Setting a Destination.....	437
Setting a Destination Using a Point of	
Interest.....	438
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive	
Destination.....	438
Setting a Destination Using a Recent	
Destination.....	438
Setting a Destination Using a Saved	
Destination.....	438
Setting a Destination Using the Map	
Screen.....	437
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry	
Screen.....	437
Setting a Memory Preset.....	421
Settings Data.....	22
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	
- Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise	
Control.....	258
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	
- Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise	
Control With Stop and Go.....	259
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control	
Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise	
Control.....	257
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control	
Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise	
Control With Stop and Go.....	257
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	123
Setting the Charging Schedule and	
Preferences.....	198
Setting the Clock and Date.....	421
Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	251
Setting the Liftgate Opening	
Height.....	65
Setting the Speed Limit.....	276
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition	
Speed Warning.....	306
Setting the Temperature.....	123
Setting the Wake Word.....	426
Shifting Into Reverse.....	206
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of	
Park (P).....	209
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	209
Side Parking Aid.....	237
Locating the Side Parking Aid	
Sensors.....	238
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	238
Side Parking Aid Limitations.....	237
What is the Side Parking Aid.....	237
Signing In to Your Account.....	428
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	128
Software Update Indicators.....	444
Software Update Settings.....	443

Index

Software Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	443
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Double Locking.....	442
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles	
With: Single Locking.....	442
Special Notices - Turkey.....	18
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	251
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	277
Speed Limiter Indicators.....	277
Speed Limiter Precautions.....	276
Speed Limiter.....	276
Speedometer.....	107
Speed Sign Recognition	
Indicators.....	305
Speed Sign Recognition	
Limitations.....	305
Speed Sign Recognition	
Precautions.....	305
Speed Sign Recognition.....	305
Speed Sign Recognition -	
Troubleshooting.....	306
Speed Sign Recognition -	
Troubleshooting.....	306
Speed Sign Recognition - Information	
Messages.....	306
Stability Control Indicator.....	231
Stability Control.....	231
Starting and Stopping the Engine -	
Precautions.....	149
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	149
Automatic Engine Stop.....	152
Starting and Stopping the Engine -	
Troubleshooting.....	153
Starting the Engine.....	150
Stopping the Engine.....	151
Starting and Stopping the Engine -	
Troubleshooting.....	153
Starting and Stopping the Engine -	
Frequently Asked Questions.....	155
Starting and Stopping the Engine -	
Information Messages.....	154
Starting and Stopping the Engine -	
Warning Lamps.....	153
Starting the Engine.....	150
Restarting the Engine After Stopping	
It.....	151
Starting a Flooded Engine.....	151
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	150
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
System.....	150
Status Bar.....	424
Steering.....	232
Electric Power Steering.....	232
Steering - Troubleshooting.....	233
Steering - Troubleshooting.....	233
Steering - Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	234
Steering - Information Messages.....	233
Steering - Warning Lamps.....	233
Steering Wheel.....	74
Stopping the Engine.....	165
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Moving.....	152
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is	
Stationary.....	151
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	68
Storage.....	148
Cup Holders.....	148
Glasses Holder.....	148
Storing a First Aid Kit.....	343
Storing a Warning Triangle.....	343
Storing Your Vehicle.....	379
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof.....	102
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off	
- Vehicles With: Fully Active Park	
Assist.....	248
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off	
- Vehicles With: Semi Active Park	
Assist.....	248
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On	
and Off.....	256
Switching Air Conditioning On and	
Off.....	122
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On	
and Off.....	93
Switching Android Auto On and	
Off.....	436
Switching Apple CarPlay On and	
Off.....	435
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	227
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and	
Off.....	165

Index

Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	291
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	122
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	296
Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....	251
Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	307
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off.....	60
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	262
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....	280
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off - Manual Transmission.....	226
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	122
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	122
Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	235
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	122
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off.....	420
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....	223
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off.....	420
Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	231
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	433
Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off.....	244
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off.....	246
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	247
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	420
Switching the Display On and Off.....	422
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off.....	122
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	93
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	332
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off.....	118
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	123
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	123
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	74
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	123
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....	279
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....	278
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	282
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	282
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....	43
Switching the Power Liftgate On and Off.....	65
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	93
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	77
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles With: Lane Centering.....	276
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off - Vehicles Without: Lane Centering.....	276
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	229
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off.....	312
System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	443
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	442
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	442

Index

T

Tachometer - Excluding: Full Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	106
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	400
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	210
Entering Temporary Neutral Mode.....	211
Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode.....	211
How Does Temporary Neutral Mode	
Work.....	210
Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations.....	211
Third Party Software Copyright	
Acknowledgment.....	453
Tire Care.....	382
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Limitations.....	391
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Precautions.....	391
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	391
Tire Pressure Monitoring System –	
Troubleshooting.....	392
Tire Pressure Monitoring System –	
Troubleshooting.....	392
Tire Pressure Monitoring System –	
Information Messages.....	393
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning	
Lamps.....	392
Tire Pressure Specifications.....	382
Tire Rotation.....	384
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	
Components.....	386
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	
Precautions.....	386
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	386
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable	
Tow Ball.....	318
Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	319
Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	319
Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....	318
Tow Ball Precautions.....	318
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Retractable	
Tow Ball.....	320
Deploying the Tow Ball Arm.....	322
Retracting the Tow Ball Arm.....	322
Tow Ball Arm Guidelines.....	321
Tow Ball Components.....	321
Tow Ball Limitations.....	320
Tow Ball Precautions.....	320
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	324
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	324
Towing a Trailer.....	324
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	325
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	325
Tow Bar Dimensions.....	325
Towing Weight Capacities.....	325
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	339
Towing Your Vehicle.....	339
Towing Your Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	340
Towing Your Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	340
Towing Your Vehicle – Information	
Messages.....	340
Traction Control Indicator.....	229
Traction Control.....	229
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	229
Traction Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	229
Traction Control – Information	
Messages.....	230
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	229
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators.....	310
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Limitations.....	309
Traffic Sign Recognition	
Precautions.....	309
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings.....	310
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	309
Traffic Sign Recognition –	
Troubleshooting.....	311
Traffic Sign Recognition –	
Troubleshooting.....	311
Traffic Sign Recognition – Information	
Messages.....	311
Trailer Towing Hints.....	325
Trailer Towing Navigation.....	438
Trip Computer.....	117
Trip Data.....	117
Trip Summary.....	115
Tyre Pressure Specifications	
See: Tire Pressure Specifications.....	382

Index

U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	344
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	344
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	345
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	344
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, LHD.....	356
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™, RHD.....	357
Under Hood Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), LHD.....	359
Under Hood Overview - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), RHD.....	358
USB Ports.....	143
Using Alexa Built-In.....	428
Using Auto Hold - Automatic Transmission.....	228
Using Auto Hold - Manual Transmission.....	227
Using Keyless Entry.....	58
Using Snow Chains.....	381
Using Summer Tires.....	381
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....	112
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	387
Using This Publication.....	17
Using Winter Tires.....	381
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging.....	198

V

Vehicle Care.....	374
Cleaning the Exterior.....	374
Cleaning the Interior.....	376
Vehicle Charging Status.....	115
Vehicle Dimensions.....	402
Vehicle Identification Number.....	413
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	413
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	413
Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate.....	413

Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....	413
Vehicle Identification.....	413
Vehicle Identification Number.....	413
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	413
Vehicle Range Display.....	107
Vehicle Software Updates.....	442
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	442
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	442
Vehicle System Reset.....	445
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	419
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....	419
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	418
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	419
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	122
Venting the Moonroof.....	103
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level.....	274
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	391
Viewing the Trip Summary.....	274
Visual Search.....	25
Voice Interaction Examples.....	426
Voice Interaction.....	426

W

Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication.....	17
Washer Fluid Specification.....	410
Washers.....	78
Adding Washer Fluid.....	79
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	78
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	79
Using the Windshield Washer.....	78
Washer Precautions.....	78
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	75
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	378
Waypoints.....	438
Adding a Waypoint.....	438
Editing Waypoints.....	438

Index

What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	109
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	108
What is AC Charging.....	189
What is a Connected Vehicle.....	415
What is Active Park Assist.....	248
What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....	157
What is Alexa Built-In.....	428
What is Auto-Start-Stop.....	165
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	290
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	295
What Is Cruise Control.....	251
What Is Drive Mode Control - Excluding: Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	270
What Is Drive Mode Control - Full Hybrid Electric Vehicle (FHEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	270
What Is Driver Alert.....	307
What Is eCall.....	46
What Is Eco Coach.....	274
What Is Geofencing.....	440
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	226
What Is Keyless Entry.....	58
What Is Local Hazard Information.....	275
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	298
What Is Remote Start.....	120
What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	222
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....	305
What Is Stability Control.....	231
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	127
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	185
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	218
What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	186
What Is the Head Up Display.....	118
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	188
What Is the Information Bar.....	108
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	278
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	281
What Is the Memory Function.....	141
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....	45
What Is the Power Outlet.....	145
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	138
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	241
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	391
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	386
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	146
What Is Traction Control.....	229
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....	309
What is Voice Interaction.....	426
What Is Wrong Way Alert.....	312
Wheel and Tire Information.....	381
Wheel Nuts.....	399
Wi Fi	
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	418
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	415
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	418
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	418
Window Bounce-Back.....	96
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	96
Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....	97
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	96
Windows.....	95
Global Opening and Closing.....	95
Window Bounce-Back.....	96
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	79
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	79
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	79
Wipers and Washers.....	75
Autowipers.....	76
Reverse Wipe.....	77
Washers.....	78
Wipers.....	75
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	79
Wipers.....	75
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	75
Wiper Precautions.....	75
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	146

Index

Wireless Accessory Charger.....	146
Wrong Way Alert Limitations.....	312
Wrong Way Alert Precautions.....	312
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	313
Wrong Way Alert – Information Messages.....	313
Wrong Way Alert.....	312
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	313

Y

Your Authorized Dealer.....	446
-----------------------------	-----

